

## NZAuASB Board Meeting Agenda

Wednesday, 12 June 2024

8:30 am to 1.00 pm, [Virtual Click here to join the meeting](#)

Apologies: None

8.45am	<b>1</b>	<b><u>Board Management</u></b>				
	1.1	Action list	Approve	Paper	3	
	1.2	Chair's report	Note	Verbal		
	1.3	AUASB Update	Note	Verbal		
	1.4	Update from CE	Note	Verbal		
	1.5	National Standard setters meeting report	Note	Paper		3
9.15am	<b>2</b>	<b><u>NZAuASB work plan</u></b>				<i>MP</i>
	2.1	Summary paper	Note	Paper	4	
	2.2	Summary slides	Consider	Paper	5	
	2.3	Prioritisation schedule 2023/24	Consider	Paper		8
	2.4	Prioritisation schedule 2024/25	Consider	Paper		11
	2.5	Outline of possible NZAuASB meeting agendas	Consider	Paper		14
9.45am	<b>3</b>	<b><u>Environmental scanning</u></b>				AH
	3.1	International Update	Note	Paper	10	
	3.2	Domestic Update	Note	Paper	14	
	3.3	Update for XRB Board	Note	Paper	16	
10.00am	<i>Morning tea</i>					
10:15am	<b>4</b>	<b><u>ISA (NZ) for LCE</u></b>				BM
	4.1	Summary paper	Note	Paper	26	
	4.2	Issues paper: Authority	Consider	Paper	29	
	4.3	Issues paper: Part 11	Consider	Paper	33	
	4.4	Draft standard	Consider	Paper	41	
	4.5	Authority of the ISA (NZ) for LCE	Note	Paper		15
	4.6	Overview on the drafting of the standard	Note	Paper		20
	4.7	Background to development of Part 11	Note	Paper		24
	4.8	Mapping document: Requirements	Note	Paper		25
	4.9	Mapping document: Application Material/EEM	Note	Paper		55
	4.10	International update on the ISA for LCE	Note	Paper		78
11:45pm	<b>5</b>	<b><u>Monitoring of climate reporting and assurance</u></b>				KT
	5.1	Summary paper	Note	Paper	218	
12noon	<b>6</b>	<b><u>Impact of IFRS 18 changes on ISAs (NZ)</u></b>				AH
	6.1	Summary paper	Note	Paper	220	

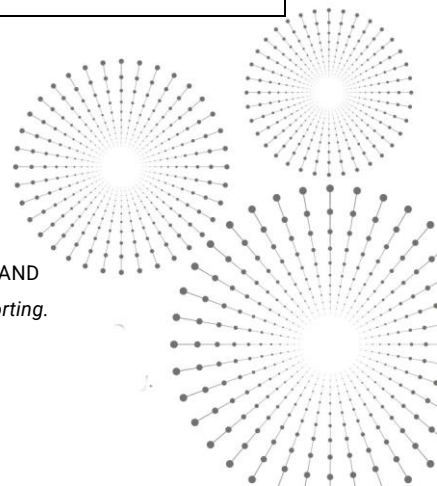
	6.2	Draft Amending Standard	Approve	Paper	223	
	6.3	Draft Signing Memorandum	Approve	Paper	240	

**Next meeting:** 7 August 2024, In person

**NZAuASB Action list**

Following April 2024 meeting

Meeting Arose	Board Action	Target Meeting	Status
Oct 2023	Continue to explore next steps on trust and confidence with the IOD	April 2024	To consider research opportunities before committing to next steps. Possible areas to explore: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What is audit and assurance for, benefits of assurance</li> <li>• Help users understand what engagement covers and what audit does</li> </ul>
April 2024	Approval of submissions to the IESBA and the IAASB by circular resolution	Submission due dates	Complete. Following the NSS meetings, in agreement with the NZAuASB Chair, adjusted the response to the IESBA to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Commend the IESBA’s efforts to reach the strategic agreement with the IAF, and that this is a great start towards profession agnostic standards.</li> <li>• The key message is that the proposals are long and complex. We added specific suggestions to simplify and streamline:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Remove groups and value chain, suggest non-authoritative guidance to sit beside the Code, to codify in due course.</li> <li>○ Remove the sub-sections detailing specific non-assurance services. Examples can be included in guidance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
April 2024	Share the exposure draft of the review of service performance information with the OAG. Subject to changes requested by the NZAuASB and subject to no fatal flaws from the OAG, issue the consultation document and exposure draft	Complete	Shared with OAG. Useful suggestions and edits made. Issued the exposure draft seeking feedback in July.



## NZAuASB Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<b>AGENDA ITEM NO.</b>	2.1
<b>Meeting date:</b>	12 June 2023
<b>Subject:</b>	NZAuASB work plan and performance expectations
<b>Date:</b>	29 May 2024
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Misha Pieters

---

**Action Required**

**For Information Purposes Only**

---

### Agenda Item Objectives

- For the Board to:
  - NOTE the NZAuASB Outputs and prioritisation plan for 2023/24.
  - CONSIDER the planned outputs and prioritisation plan for 2024/2025.

### Background

- The NZAuASB discussed a draft plan for 2024/2025 at its February meeting. The XRB's statement of performance expectations for 2024/2025 will be finalised by the end of June. The XRB's [statement of intent](#) (SOI) 2022-2027 included the following priority assurance related actions:
  - Assurance over non-financial disclosures including Greenhouse gas assurance engagements.
  - Audit of Service Performance Information.
  - Audit quality reforms in New Zealand.

### Matters for consideration

#### *2023/24 performance*

- The attached slides together with the completed prioritisation schedule summarise the key achievements for the 2023/2024 year.
- Board members are asked to NOTE the 2023/24 update and prioritisation schedule which will be reflected in the annual report for the period.**

#### *2024/25 performance*

- The attached slides together with the draft prioritisation schedule provide an overview of the planned priorities for the 2024/25 period. A possible outline of the NZAuASB meeting agendas for the 12 months provide possible timelines.
- Board members are asked to COMMENT on the planned outputs and Prioritisation plan for 2024/2025.**

### Material Presented

Agenda item 2.1	Board Meeting Summary Paper
Agenda item 2.2	Summary slide pack
Agenda item 2.3	2023/24 prioritisation plan (for noting)
Agenda item 2.4	2024/25 prioritisation plan (to consider)
Agenda item 2.5	2024/25 possible NZAuASB agendas



*Te Kāwai Ārahi Pūrongo Mōwaho*  
**EXTERNAL REPORTING BOARD**

# Audit and Assurance Standards

## Work plan highlights

Agenda item 2.2



## Highlights for 2023/24



- Assurance standard on greenhouse gas emissions disclosures with accompanying guidance.
- Issued a revised auditing standard on service performance information and an exposure draft of a review standard.
- Research report on audit committee chairs perceptions on *Trust and Confidence*
- Hosting international guests IAASB Chair and IESBA Task Force Chair
- Submissions on Fraud, Going Concern and Sustainability matters

*(Refer to 2023/24 Prioritization plan for more detail)*

# Outputs for 2023/24

	Standards issued	Exposure drafts issued	Guidance issued	Engagement	International influence
Complete	<p>GHG assurance</p> <p>Revised SPI audit</p> <p>Narrow scope PIE (track 1)</p> <p>Consequential amendments from IFRS 18</p>	<p>ED ISSA 5000</p> <p>Ethics and Independence for Sustainability</p> <p>Use of Experts</p> <p>Review of SPI</p> <p>Fraud</p> <p>Narrow scope PIE (track 2) plus domestic consultation</p>	<p>4 GHG guidance documents</p> <p>2 Factsheets on SPI</p> <p>Perceptions on Trust and Confidence</p> <p>Research</p>	<p>2 Need to Know Webinars</p> <p>7 Focus group discussions</p> <p>3 Virtual feedback forums</p> <p>2 Deep Dives</p> <p>10 roundtables /panel or other</p>	<p>Membership on the IAASB Audit Evidence, Going Concern and Fraud Task Force</p> <p>6 submissions</p> <p>Host IAASB Chair and IESBA Task Force Chair</p> <p>NSS in person</p>
Not yet complete		ISA (NZ) for LCE in progress			

# Strategic priorities for 2024/25

- Same three strategic focus areas
  - Audits of financial statements
    - Retain convergence and harmonization with international standards
    - Issue ISA for LCE for less complex entities and continue to explore if this meets needs
    - Explore audit quality measures to inform our standard setting work and post implementation reviews
  - Climate and mandatory greenhouse gas emissions disclosures assurance
    - Monitor developments
    - Consider competency requirements
    - Hold workshops and issue guidance and comms ahead of mandatory assurance
    - Survey or research user needs of assurance
    - Determine XRB strategy for assurance standards
  - Service performance information
    - Finalize review standard
    - Monitor pain points
    - Hold workshops and issue guidance to support

*(Refer to 2024/25 Prioritization schedule and outline of NZAuASB meeting plans for more detail)*



## 2024/25 Statement of performance expectation

Standards	Exposure Drafts	Guidance/Events	International influence
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ISA (NZ) for LCE</li> <li>• Review of SPI</li> <li>• ISSA 5000</li> <li>• Determine what to do with Ethics and Independence Sustainability</li> <li>• Use of experts</li> <li>• Going Concern</li> <li>• PIE (track 2)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ED ISA (NZ) for LCE</li> <li>• Narrow scope use of experts</li> <li>• Collective investment vehicles</li> <li>• Post implementation review NOCLAR</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limited v Reasonable assurance</li> <li>• GHG assurance</li> <li>• Audit of Service Performance</li> <li>• Review of Service Performance</li> <li>• Going Concern</li> <li>• Public interest entity requirements</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain membership on the IAASB and AUASB</li> <li>• No submissions expected to be finalized within the next 12 months (based on current understanding of international project timelines)</li> </ul>

## NZAuASB Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<b>AGENDA ITEM NO.</b>	3.1
<b>Meeting date:</b>	12 June 2024
<b>Subject:</b>	Environmental scan – international
<b>Date:</b>	27 May 2024
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Anna Herlender

---

Action Required

For Information Purposes Only

---

### Agenda Item Objectives

1. This update identifies the significant developments, relevant to auditing and assurance, from international organisations published since 20 March 2024. This agenda item is for information purposes.

### Background

2. The updates from international organisations have been categorised into topics and their relevance to the NZAuASB work plan:
  - a. **Category 1: Hot topics** includes articles considered to be of highest interest to the Board and directly linked with the issues explored during recent or coming Board’s meetings
  - b. **Category 2: Other publications** includes articles relating to the Board’s work plan or from the organisations with direct impact on emerging audit and assurance issues
  - c. **Category 3: Wider scan** includes articles that might be of interest to the Board members, provide wider perspective on current Board’s topics or topics that might arise in future.
3. Appendix 1 includes list of organisations whose websites were reviewed for updates.
4. NZAuASB environmental scans focus on topics relating to auditing and assurance matters. Agenda Item 9.3 includes the wider environmental scan that was prepared for the latest XRB and NZASB meeting. It might include matters not directly relating to audit or assurance but relating to XRB organisation. It is provided to NZAuASB for information purposes (after removing articles with restricted access/copyrights attached).

### Category 1: Hot topics

**Hot topic 1:** Response to PwC – regulation of accounting, auditing and consulting firms in Australia, Australia Treasury, 3 May 2024, [Read here.](#)

“This consultation paper is seeking stakeholder views and feedback on issues for Treasury’s consideration in relation to the regulation of accounting, auditing and consulting firms in Australia. This paper relates to the priority area identified for action in the Government’s PwC response: strengthening our regulatory arrangements.”.

**Hot topic 2:** Responses to IESBA sustainability proposal:

- IOSCO Statement, 10 May 2024. IOSCO outlined its general observations and its six key priority areas for IESBA's consideration in developing its final standard. [Read here](#).
- IFAC's response to IESBA's sustainability exposure draft, 10 May 2024, [Read here](#).

**Hot topic 3:** New IAASB video series explores proposed changes to fraud standard, 4 April 2024, [Watch here](#).

**Category 2: Other relevant publications**

**Audit oversight**

PCAOB Staff Spotlight: Inspection Observations Related to Auditor Use of Data and Reports, April 2024, [Read here](#).

PCAOB Issues Proposals on Standardizing Disclosure of Firm and Engagement Metrics and Modernizing the PCAOB's Reporting Framework, 9 April 2024, [Read here](#).

PCAOB Staff Spotlight: Root Cause Analysis – An Effective Practice To Drive Audit Quality, April 2024, [Read here](#).

**Sustainability**

The Role of the Auditor in Climate-Related Information. CAQ, April 2024, [Read here](#).

**Strategy documents of international bodies**

IESBA Unveils 4-year Strategic Roadmap Putting Ethics at the Heart of Corporate Decision-Making, 11 April 2024, [Read here](#).

IAASB announces new strategy and work plan to advance global audit and assurance standards, 11 April 2024, [Read here](#).

**Technology**

Auditing in the Age of Generative AI, CAQ, April 2024, [Read here](#).

**Category 3: wider scan relating to audit and assurance ecosystem**

**Accountants and competence**

Equipping Accountants for Sustainability Reporting: IFAC Proposes Enhancements to International Education Standards. Changes Also Proposed to Modernize Standard on Assessing Professional Competence. 24 April 2024, [Read here](#).

IFAC Identifies Key Areas Accountants Need to Update their Knowledge & Skills to Prepare for Increasing Sustainability Demands, 10 April 2024, [Read here](#).

**Ethics**

APESB Dinner Event Novotel Melbourne. Keynote Address from Gabriela Figueiredo Dias, IESBA Chair, 9 May 2024, [Read here](#).

IESBA Launches First Global Ethics Standards on Tax Planning, 15 April 2024, [Read here](#).

**Sustainability**

SEC Stays Its Climate Rule; But Do Not Put Your Pencils Down, Convington Alert, 16 April 2024, [Read here](#)

Global finance teams failing to integrate sustainability, ICAEW Insights, 14 May 2024, [Read here](#).

### **Technology**

Enabling trust in an AI-enhanced world, ACCA, 1 May 2024, [Read here](#).

Demystifying technology's impact on auditing: What do experts say?, Accountancy Europe, 24 May 2024, [Read here](#).

Over-reliance on automation: a cautionary tale from Plato, ICAEW Insights, 27 May 2024, [Read here](#).

How auditors can meet the client tech challenge, ICAEW Insights, 22 May 2024, [Read here](#).

Crypto assets inspections insights, CPAB, 23 May 2024, [Read here](#)

AI in financial reporting and audit: Navigating the new era, KPMG, 2 April 2024, [Read here](#).

## **Appendix 1: List of organisations reviewed for updates**

### International Standard Setting Bodies

1. Monitoring Group
2. Public Interest Oversight Body (PIOB)
3. International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB)
4. International Ethic Board for Accountants (IESBA)

### International Audit and Assurance Regulator Forums

5. International Forum of Independent Audit Regulators (IFIAR)
6. International Organisation of Securities Commissions (IOSCO)

### International Professional Bodies

7. International Federation of Accountants (IFAC)
8. Association of Chartered Certified Accountants (ACCA)

### Developments in local jurisdictions

#### *Australia*

9. Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB)
10. Accounting Professional & Ethical Standards Board (APESB)

#### *Europe*

11. Accountancy Europe

#### *United Kingdom*

12. Financial Reporting Council (FRC)
13. Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales (ICAEW)

#### *United States*

14. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
15. Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB)
16. American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) & Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA)
17. Center for Audit Quality (CAQ)

#### *Canada*

18. Canadian Public Accountability Board (CPAB)
19. Canadian Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AASB)

### Insights from practitioners and other publications

20. Insights from practitioners
21. Other articles

## NZAuASB Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<b>AGENDA ITEM NO.</b>	3.2
<b>Meeting date:</b>	12 June 2024
<b>Subject:</b>	Environmental scan - domestic
<b>Date:</b>	24 May 2024
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Anna Herlender

---

Action Required

For Information Purposes Only

---

### Agenda Item Objectives

1. This update summarises the significant developments relevant to auditing and assurance from New Zealand organisations published since 19 March 2024. This agenda item is for information only.

### Background

2. Publications from the following organisations were reviewed:
  - The Financial Markets Authority (FMA)
  - The Chartered Accountants Australia and New Zealand (CA ANZ)
  - The Institute of Directors (IoD)
  - Other publications, including audit firms' insights and reports.

### Hot Topics

3. We have not identified any hot topics for this period.

### Other publications

4. Below are other publications, not directly linked to the Board work plan, providing wider perspectives or news.

[Insights into key audit matters in Australia](#), CA ANZ, 9 April 2024.

“Research analyses ASX listed companies’ KAMs reported in 2023.

- This report covers balance dates between 31 December 2022 and 30 September 2023
- The average number of KAMs per audit report has decreased slightly compared to the previous year
- Exploration assets remained the most frequent KAM subject matter in 2023”.

[In a world of shifting priorities are investors getting what they need](#), PwC, 26 March 2024

*“Data referenced in this article is based on the responses from 36 global investors who responded that they invest in New Zealand.”*

*“100% of investors believe that corporate reporting contains at least some unsupported claims about a company’s sustainability performance (e.g. greenwashing).”*

[Truthfulness in company operations: ASIC insights | Chapter Zero](#), Guy Beatson, GM Governance Leadership Centre, IoD, 4 May 2024

*“The Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) scored a major court victory this week against Vanguard, one of the three biggest investment firms globally.”*

*“On the face of it, it is a lesson about “greenwashing”, but it is much broader and sends a strong signal to businesses operating in Australia to be careful when making claims about their activities and the way they operate.”*

[Attract, Retain, Engage: New research sheds light on the fight for audit talent](#), CA ANZ, 27 March 2024

*“CA ANZ and ACCA have released a new joint research report Attract, Retain, Engage: Insights and Recommendations for Audit Talent Success*

- Major challenges that the audit profession faces in attracting and retaining talent are set in ACCA & CA ANZ’s new report
- More than 6500 professionals participated in the research globally via surveys and roundtables
- Key issues are work life balance, fair remuneration and career ladders/ variety of work”.

Note: This Memo was prepared for the XRB/NZASB purposes and is for the information purposes of NZAuASB.

## Memorandum

---

Date: 23 May 2024

To: Members of the NZ Accounting Standards Board

From: Judith Pinny

Subject: Environmental Update

---

### Recommendation<sup>1</sup>

1. We recommend that the Board NOTES the International and Domestic update for the period 5 March 2024 to 27 May 2024.

### Purpose and impact

2. The purpose of the Environmental Update is to identify emerging issues and provide an update on developments in the financial and climate reporting landscape of strategic interest to the Board.
3. Items with strategic impact on the External Reporting Board:

#### International

- (a) IFRS Foundation article on [Digital financial reporting](#) provides a good introduction and examples.
- (b) AASB research on the [understandability of standards](#) presented at IFASS.
- (c) Discussion at IFASS on applying [artificial intelligence](#) to standard setting.
- (d) Scottish and South African standard setters examine the [materiality concept](#) in financial and sustainability reporting.

#### Domestic

- (e) [Articles](#) discussing the potential impact on the NZ government's reporting of the recent IFRIC agenda decision on Climate-related commitments.
- (f) NBR interview with [Samantha Barrass](#), CE of FMA about the regulation of outcomes.
- (g) Chapman Tripp report that NZ's early introduction of mandatory climate standards is giving NZ businesses a [competitive advantage for trade](#).
- (h) The Reserve Bank is consulting on "digital cash".

---

<sup>1</sup> This memo refers to the work of the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) and uses registered trademarks of the IFRS Foundation (for example, IFRS® Standards, IFRIC® Interpretations and IASB® papers). It also refers to the work of the International Sustainability Standards Board (ISSB).



## International

### IFAC: Global regulatory report

4. The April 2024 report: [IFAC Global Regulatory Report April 2024](#)

### IFRS Foundation: Trustees meeting: February 2024

5. The IFRS Foundation Trustees met in February 2024 and topics of interest included:
- (a) In January 2024, a **Strategy Taskforce**, comprising seven Trustees and chaired by Bob Pozen, was formed to progress discussions on the Foundation's strategic direction and to help guide the Trustees in applying their responsibilities under the IFRS Foundation Constitution to 'review annually the strategy of the IFRS Foundation, the IASB and the ISSB and its effectiveness'.
  - (b) Lee White introduced plans to extend the term of the **Foundation's Eminent Persons Group** until the end of 2025. The Group was initially formed to provide strategic advice and counsel to the Trustees on the proposed formation of the ISSB and its connectivity with jurisdictional initiatives but has continued to provide advice under the chairmanship of Jean-Claude Trichet. Trustees were supportive of the extending the term of the Group, noting the valuable advice and feedback from the market that its members provide.
  - (c) It was further proposed by the Chair of Trustees to establish an **IFRS Group of Fellows**, members of which would be drawn from academia, policy and corporate backgrounds, with a purpose to help identify key strategic issues for the future of the IFRS Foundation and bring them to the attention of the Trustees.

[trustees-meeting-summary.pdf \(ifrs.org\)](#)

### IFRS Foundation: DPOC – Independence of IFRIC Interpretations Committee members

6. The Due Process Oversight Committee (DPOC) received two letters from Rethinking Capital about governance matters surrounding the recent decision on climate-related commitments – IAS 37 *Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets*. Rethinking Capital was unhappy about the independence of the members of the IFRS Interpretations Committee who came from accounting firms. The Director of Governance reported that only 5 out of 14 Interpretations Committee members are from accounting firms and there are processes to guard against potential perceived conflicts of interest. They also noted that accounting firm appointments were consistent with the IFRS Foundation's Constitution.

[dpoc-meeting-summary.pdf \(ifrs.org\)](#)

IFRS Foundation: 2023 Annual Report

7. The 2023 Annual report is available [here](#).
8. The NZ funding from the XRB being £274,654 is noted on p73.
9. The summary article about the Annual Report on the IFRS Foundation's website is here: [IFRS Foundation publishes 2023 Annual Report](#)

IFRS Foundation: Article on Digital financial reporting

10. This article introduces digital financial reporting and provides examples of the Taxonomies working for IFRS Accounting and IFRS Sustainability disclosures. It also provides a summary of how accounting taxonomies are used in the US, European Union, South Korea and South Africa.

[Digital Financial Reporting article](#)

[Back to International](#)

IFRS Foundation: Survey on digital offerings

11. The IFRS Foundation is exploring options for introducing an epub service, seeking feedback on the current digital offerings, and seeking input on possible new products and their features.
12. Link to survey at [Your views on evolving the IFRS Foundation's digital offering](#)

ISSB: New research projects

13. Following the recent ISSB Agenda Consultation, the ISSB has decided to commence projects on:
  - (a) Biodiversity and ecosystems; and
  - (b) Human capital.
14. The ISSB will be looking at relevant pre-existing work, such as that by the Task Force on Nature-related Disclosures for its Biodiversity project.
15. The ISSB will publish its workplan for the next 2 years in June 2024, and also a feedback statement on the consultation.

IFASS<sup>2</sup>: Australian Research on understandability of Accounting Standards

16. The AASB Chair, Keith Kendall, introduced research motivated by claims that “accounting standards have become so ‘outrageously complex’ that it is difficult for investors to understand financial statements”. The research objective was to investigate the factors that impact the ability of the users of IFRS Accounting Standards to comprehend their meaning and requirements. Researchers first studied the Australian environment, then expanded the scope to global.
17. Findings included:
  - (a) Lack of understandability impacts the application of standards;
  - (b) Inconsistent use of language and complex sentences impair understandability;
  - (c) Examples are usually helpful, but flowcharts are better; and
  - (d) Less-resourced users have limited access to standards and supporting materials which hampers adequate education. This could be improved by open access to primary material and translation into more languages.
18. One outcome is when standards are perceived to be difficult to understand, users rely on experts which leads to less general understanding of the standards in the accounting community.

[Standard setters discuss understandability of accounting standards \(iasplus.com\)](https://iasplus.com)

[Back to International](#)

IFASS: Use of AI in Standard setting

19. Of particular interest to standard setters are the generative artificial intelligence (AI) subgroup of large language models (LLM) trained on high volume data sets to generate, summarise and translate human-like text.
20. There were two presentations:
  - (a) A general introduction to AI
  - (b) An example of a trained LLM being used to analyse 11,000 sustainability reports to see whether TCFD<sup>3</sup> recommendations had been followed. The conclusion was that this type of task needs to have references to enable a careful review of the findings and possible refinement by the reviewer.

---

<sup>2</sup> International Forum of Accounting Standard Setters.

<sup>3</sup> Task Force on Climate-Related Financial Disclosures.

21. Possible uses were in descending order of popularity:
  - (a) Literature review of standard-setting topics (most popular);
  - (b) Stakeholder survey results analysis;
  - (c) Stakeholder comment letter analysis;
  - (d) Disclosure and financial statement analysis;
  - (e) Mapping and checking consistency of guidance and requirements; and
  - (f) Assessing pervasiveness of transactions across companies.

[AI in standard setting \(iasplus.com\)](#)

[Back to International](#)

#### ICAS and IRC publish reports on materiality

22. The Institute of Chartered Accountants of Scotland (ICAS) has published a report on materiality in financial and sustainability reporting considering whether there should be one or multiple interpretations of materiality.
23. The Integrated Reporting Committee of South Africa (IRC) provides an FAQ on materiality in corporate reporting.

[ICAS and IRC examine the materiality concept in financial and sustainability reporting \(iasplus.com\)](#)

[Back to Domestic](#)

#### EIOPA: Report on the implementation of IFRS 17 in Europe

24. The European Insurance and Occupational Pensions Authority (EIOPA) has released a report on the implementation of IFRS 17 *Insurance Contracts* in the European Union. The report shows that insurers have utilised all 3 transition approaches provided in IFRS 17 to a similar extent.
25. The move to IFRS 17 led to significant changes in the value of insurance liabilities given the use of different valuation approaches, the shift from implicit prudence to explicit risk adjustment and the introduction of a contractual service margin (CSM) in IFRS 17.

[Report on the implementation of IFRS 17 - Insurance contracts - European Union \(europa.eu\)](#)

## **Domestic**

Radio NZ: Accounting for carbon offset obligations in the Government's financial statements

26. Wendy McGuinness wants the government to account for its obligations under the 2016 Paris agreement on the face of its financial statements:

The issue is the \$3-\$23 billion that needs to be paid by 2030, to buy carbon offsets from overseas to meet New Zealand's climate target.

...

The overseas top-up is planned because New Zealand's own carbon reductions are not on track to meet its whole first target under the Paris Agreement, and making purchases overseas is likely to be cheaper than doing all the work here.

...

Although Treasury notes the existence of this obligation in the country's financial statements, it appears as a sidenote, not in the balance sheet. There is no financial provision for paying for it.

... Wendy McGuinness is on a mission to persuade Treasury to re-think that call - and add a provision to this year's statements, due mid-2024.

[The woman fighting climate change with accounting | RNZ News](#)

Newsroom: Effect of IFRIC decision on reporting NZ's climate obligations

27. Newsroom article discussing the potential impact on NZ financial reporting of the recent IASB approval of the IFRIC agenda decision on Climate-related commitments.

[Back to Domestic](#)

FMA: Craig Stobo is appointed new chair

28. Craig Stobo has been appointed by Minister Bayly for a 5-year term as chair of the FMA, replacing Mark Todd.
29. Craig Stobo is a professional director with experience as a diplomat, economist, chief investment officer and chief executive. He is currently the chair of the Local Government Funding Agency and NZ Windfarms.

[Craig Stobo appointed as chair of FMA | Beehive.govt.nz](#)

NBR: Interview with Samantha Barrass, FMA

30. The interview focussed on a recent consultation document focussing on fair outcomes for consumers and markets. Legal submissions have been critical of how the wide powers of the FMA could be applied to “outcomes”. FMA thinking is still developing on how the outcomes will be measured.

[Back to Domestic](#)

NZ Herald: Incorporating ESG into cost of equity calculations

31. This article by Katie Beith and Aaron Ibbotson of Forsyth Barr shows how Forsyth Barr are incorporating carbon and ESG into their investor reporting and it is starting to make a difference to the allocation of capital by investors.

Chapman Tripp report: Protecting NZ's Competitive Advantage

32. This report, commissioned by Aotearoa Circle, brings together the regulations and changes that are happening offshore in sustainability reporting and trade trends.

33. Key insights include:

Mandatory climate reporting has expanded significantly since the Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) released its recommendations in 2017. According to the TCFD, over 60% of world GDP is now subject to mandatory climate-related disclosures (CRD) measures, either proposed or already in force. Increasingly, these are benchmarked to the new global CRD standard – the ISSB’s IFRS S2. Several jurisdictions (such as Canada and Japan) are looking to mandate broader sustainability disclosures to include natural capital risk. Some, such as the EU, already require this.

As CRD regimes continue to bed-in and expand globally, we foresee that the **ability to demonstrate an understanding of, and support, climate-related reporting will become a key competitive advantage for New Zealand businesses**. New Zealand companies that have invested in upskilling will be well placed to seize opportunities and protect market access.

34. 80% of NZ exports now go to countries with Mandatory Climate-related disclosures either in force or proposed. Climate change and environmental protection are also now key topics in Free Trade Agreement negotiations.

[Aotearoa Circle Report - Protecting NZs competitive advantage](#)

[Back to Domestic](#)

CA ANZ: NZ For-purpose reporting awards announced

35. These awards which were previously known as the Charity awards have been announced for 2024. There are awards for Reporting Tiers, a Sustainability Award and a first-time entrant award. The judging panel included Nives Botica-Redmayne and Zowie Pateman.
36. Stardome Observatory in Auckland won the Tier 1 and 2 award and the 2023 Annual Report can be seen here: [Stardome Observatory](#). The space theme makes for an enjoyable read, and one of its strategic goals is to “Tell our story”.

[New Zealand For Purpose Reporting Awards | CA ANZ \(charteredaccountantsanz.com\)](#)

Auditor-General: Cyber security in public organisations

37. The Auditor-General has announced an investigation into cyber security governance in selected public service organisations.
38. The Auditor-General will examine how well a sample of public organisations govern their cyber security risk preparedness and response. This includes known and emerging risks from legacy systems and new technology, including generative artificial intelligence, cloud storage, and “as a service” activities.
39. The Auditor-General will focus on whether there is effective governance of cyber security risks in the selected public organisations. They have chosen organisations to represent a range of organisational type, function, size, and location.
40. The Auditor-General will examine how well the governors of these organisations:
  - (a) ensure that their organisation identifies and understands its cyber security risks and the vulnerabilities of its information and/or its services; and
  - (b) enable, review, and monitor cyber security risk management within their organisation.

[Cyber security governance in public organisations — OAG](#)

Inland Revenue: Law Change for Charity Deregistration

41. Parliament has passed into law a change to the charity deregistration tax rules. When a charity is deregistered and does not reregister with within one year, income tax must be paid on certain net assets if they are not transferred to another registered charity or a New Zealand tax-exempt entity.

42. Assets transferred to an overseas charity do not qualify. In this situation, deregistered charities may be required to pay deregistration tax. This applies to charities that deregister on or after 1 April 2024.

[Charities deregistration tax on assets \(ird.govt.nz\)](https://ird.govt.nz)

Inland Revenue: Disposal of trading stock by a business to an approved donee organisation

43. A permanent change now applies when a business disposes of, or donates trading stock to approved donee organisation(s) at less than market value. This change replaces the temporary measures that were in place due to Covid-19 and adverse weather events, which ended on March 31, 2024.
44. Previously, businesses were required to treat such disposals or donations as if they were sales at market value. However, this is no longer the case.
45. This change applies to disposals of, or donations of trading stock to approved donee organisations from 1 April 2024.

[Disposals of trading stock below market value \(ird.govt.nz\)](https://ird.govt.nz)

RBNZ: Consultation on Digital currency

46. The Reserve Bank (RBNZ) is currently consulting on “digital cash”. It would be the first digital form of New Zealand currency backed by the government and available to the public. Physical cash in banknotes and coins will still be available.
47. Digital cash would be private, secure, and trusted – the Reserve Bank would not control or see how you spend your money. You would probably need a digital wallet, payment card or phone app to access your digital cash. You wouldn’t need a commercial bank account to use it. You could use it to make an instant digital payment to anyone in NZ.
48. This high-level consultation is open until 26 July 2024. The next stage will be testing prototypes in 2028-29 with a proposed introduction of digital cash in 2030.

[Consultation opens on a digital currency for New Zealand - RBNZ](https://www.rbnz.govt.nz/consultation/digital-currency)

[Link to RBNZ survey on Digital Cash](https://www.rbnz.govt.nz/consultation/digital-currency)

[Back to Domestic](#)



Newsdesk: Government announces new social investment fund

49. Nicola Wills, Minister of Finance has announced the new social investment fund. A social impact bond to target people living in emergency housing was a National Party policy before the election. Government confirmation of that bond has not been announced, but is likely to be worked on as part of the new fund.
50. Social impact bonds include the Government, private investors and a delivery partner. The Government will pay out when the agreed outcomes are achieved by the delivery partner.
51. This is fund is an example of the complexities that could arise with applying IPSAS 47 *Revenue* from the recipient's side and multi-party funding initiatives.

## NZAuASB Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<b>AGENDA ITEM NO.</b>	4.1
<b>Meeting date:</b>	12 June 2024
<b>Subject:</b>	ISA (NZ) for Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE)
<b>Date:</b>	28 May 2024
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Bruce Mcniven

---

**Action Required**

**For Information Purposes Only**

---

### Agenda Item Objectives

1. The objectives of this agenda item are to:
  - Provide FEEDBACK on the first draft ISA (NZ) for LCE standard;
  - DISCUSS the matters identified in the issues papers at agenda items 4.2 and 4.3;
  - MONITOR risks, through an update on international developments.

### Background

2. We have reached a milestone on this project, the development of the first draft of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, incorporating the audit of service performance information. As discussed previously, the Board has agreed to proceed to consult on adoption but continue to monitor and manage risks, via a communications plan that covers both if and how to adopt the standard in NZ.
3. To facilitate the discussion, we intend to run this agenda as follows:
  - a. Overview of ISA for LCE drafting conventions;
  - b. Applicability of the standard in New Zealand;
  - c. Part 11, a New Zealand specific chapter on service performance information; and
  - d. Update on international developments including the maintenance of the standard.
4. We have made the usual NZ changes for spelling, and carried forward paragraphs as needed from the ISAs (NZ) and adjusted the conforming amendments. These are not the focus for the agenda, but we welcome any offline feedback or comments on these.
5. Depending on feedback received, we aim to bring the exposure draft and consultation document to the August meeting for approval.
6. I thank Wendy, Mark, Lisa (Baker Tilly Staples Rodway), Thinus and Roy (OAG) for their comments and input into this draft as our sub-committee members, along with the various auditors that I've reached out to along the journey.

### ***Drafting approach***

7. The IAASB used specific 'Drafting principles' to develop the ISA for LCE. The principles are based around the content of the standard being clear, simple and concise. They used 'Alignment

principles' to explain any differences between the ISAs and the ISA for LCE to help explain how or why an ISA requirement has been included, modified or not included in the ISA for LCE. At supplementary agenda item 4.6 we provide an overview of these principles together with a overview of the design and structure of the ISA for LCE standard.

8. These principles were used by staff to draft Part 11, *Audit of Service Performance Information*.

### **Matters to consider**

#### ***Authority of ISA (NZ) for LCE – who does it apply to***

9. At its February 2024 meeting, the NZAuASB discussed that the ISA (NZ) for LCE should not be applied to Tier 1 reporting entities but there may be other entities that should be out. The XRB board expressed an interest to ensure that the applicability of the standard be appropriately restricted in the New Zealand context.
10. At agenda item 4.2, the issues paper discusses the authority section further, and asks:
  - a. Does the Board agree that we exclude FMC HLP in the Specific Prohibitions section?
  - b. Does the Board agree that we do not add any further qualitative characteristics in relation to service performance information?
  - c. Views on the quantitative thresholds.

#### ***Part 11 – New Zealand developed chapter***

11. Using the drafting principles and alignment principles discussed above, we have drafted Part 11, *Audit of Service Performance Information*. (refer to page 118 of agenda item 4.4)
12. Background on how we went about drafting the standard is at supplementary agenda item 4.7.
13. Supplementary agenda items 4.8 and 4.9 illustrate how we have applied the alignment principles to consider whether or not to include or amend requirements or application material from NZ AS 1 (Revised) as requirements or essential explanatory material (EEM) in Part 11.
14. Overall, we seek the Board's views of the inclusion of the draft Part 11 within the rest of the ISA for LCE to ensure the NZ specific part operates within this standalone standard.
15. Our issues paper, at agenda item 4.3, highlights key issues to discuss:
  - How well *Part 11* flows and integrates with the existing ISA for LCE, considering its standalone nature as an auditing standard.
  - Placing requirements to Understand the Entity ahead of Materiality requirements.
  - The Objectives as written at paragraph 11.1.1. of agenda item 4.4.
  - The audit procedures responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement.
  - Exclusion of two requirements of NZ AS 1 (Revised) from Part 11, as they don't apply in the context of an audit of a less complex entity.
  - Views on any areas that should have more EEM (taking into account the drafting principles and what is in NZ AS 1 (Revised)).
  - We seek the Board's view on the proposed amendment to enable to OAG to add public sector relevant elements into the auditor's report.

### ***International Developments***

16. A key risk for the XRB is how the ISA for LCE will be maintained by the IAASB. To enable adoption, the IAASB committed to an initial period of stability of 3 years, before any changes are made to realign with recent revisions to the ISAs. The IAASB is still to consider the best way to maintain the ISA for LCE after the initial period. The IAASB has stated that in deciding the way forward the ISA for LCE must remain up to date and, to the greatest extent possible, consistent with the ISAs. However it is unclear if the ISA for LCE will be updated periodically or after the initial period of stability, followed by a catch up period, updated at the same time as the ISAs. We will continue to monitor the IAASB's plans and will update the board once we have received further information. This is a crucial aspect to help us decide whether we continue with adoption of the standard.
17. We continue to enhance a communication plan to manage the perception risk of a two tier audit. Each country has their own considerations and frameworks that determines whether the ISA for LCE would be of use. Whilst there are some not adopting the standard, there are others that are. We continue to monitor what is happening and to take into account the reasons for and against. At supplementary agenda item 4.10, we look at countries who have not adopted the standard and their reasons as well as countries who are looking to adopt the standard.

### **Next steps**

18. Next steps for the project are:
  - a. Refine the exposure draft from Board feedback.
  - b. Develop the consultation document.
  - c. Follow up with IAASB re plans for maintenance of the standard.
  - d. Continue monitoring what is happening internationally.
  - e. Present exposure draft and consultation document at the August 2024 meeting.

### **Material Presented**

Agenda item 4.1	Board Meeting Summary Paper
Agenda item 4.2	Issues Paper: Authority
Agenda item 4.3	Issues Paper: Part 11
Agenda item 4.4	Draft standard (available in Teams for Board comments)
Supplementary Agenda item 4.5	Authority of ISA (NZ) for LCE
Supplementary Agenda item 4.6	Overview on the drafting of the standard
Supplementary Agenda item 4.7	Background to the development of Part 11
Supplementary Agenda item 4.8	Mapping document: Requirements
Supplementary Agenda item 4.9	Mapping document: Application Material/EEM
Supplementary Agenda item 4.10	International update on the ISA for LCE

## ISA (NZ) for LCE: Issues Paper: Authority

---

1. The authority section sets out the entities eligible for audit under the proposed ISA (NZ) for Less Complex Entities (LCE).
2. There are three categories of the Authority of the ISA for LCE:
  - Specific Prohibitions
  - Qualitative Characteristics
  - Quantitative Thresholds
3. These categories are summarised at Supplementary Agenda item 4.5.
4. In determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, all three categories are to be considered by the auditor: It is the *nature* of the entity that determines if this standard can be used... Are the business activities, organizational and ownership structures, finance function, technology, accounting & reporting less complex?... It also cannot be used by entities that are listed or have public interest characteristics.
5. If there is uncertainty about whether an audit meets the criteria as set out in the Authority, the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE is not appropriate, and the auditor would need to use the ISAs (NZ) to undertake their audit.
6. As an aside, we are awaiting on a document called *Supplemental Guidance on the Authority* from the IAASB to be released in Q2 this year to provide further details around the Authority. We will monitor and update the board should anything of note come out of this document once published.

### *Specific Prohibitions*

7. For clarity of who is prohibited, we propose including a specific prohibition to exclude [FMC HLPAs reporting entities](#). This is to ensure consistency of application. Our proposed exclusion in the standard (agenda item 4.4) is as follows:
  - (c) The entity falls into one of the following classes:
    - ...
    - (i) [NZ] It is an FMC reporting entity or a class of FMC reporting entities that is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” than other FMC reporting entities under section 461K of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013;
    - (ii) [NZ] It is an FMC reporting entity or a class of FMC reporting entities that is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” by a notice issued by the Financial Markets Authority (FMA) under section 461L(1)(a) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013; or ...
8. The above text is based on XRB A1 *Application of the Accounting Standards Framework*.
9. Following discussion at the February meeting, we have considered whether FMC entities with lower levels of public accountability (FMC LLPA) need to be prohibited (as they may report under Tier 2, not Tier 1). We’ve also had correspondence with the FMA. The number of FMC LLPA entities are very small. These types of entities would likely be excluded from being audited under the ISA (NZ) for LCE by the qualitative characteristics, therefore at this stage there may not be a need for a specific prohibition for FMC LLPA.

10. In conclusion, this proposed approach ensures that public interest entities, including FMC reporting entities with higher levels of public accountability, are prohibited from being audited under the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

**11. Does the Board agree that we exclude FMC HPA entities in the Specific Prohibitions section?**

*Qualitative Characteristics*

12. As a reminder, the IAASB does not enable standard setting bodies to amend the qualitative characteristics. As we have developed Part 11, we have considered whether to add any qualitative characteristics of a less complex entity in relation to service performance information. We also enquired from practitioners and the OAG as to whether they have any recommendations. None were forthcoming and most said that we didn't need to include any qualitative characteristics in relation to service performance information. We agree with this and have not amended the qualitative characteristics section in relation to service performance information.

**13. Does the Board agree that we do not add any further qualitative characteristics in relation to service performance information?**

*Quantitative Thresholds*

14. While the IAASB noted in its *Basis for Conclusions* that complexity is not directly linked to size, it acknowledged that the use of quantitative thresholds may serve as an additional "safeguard" to limit the range of entities perceived to be within the scope of the standard. The IAASB added in the Authority, the expectation, local bodies with standard-setting authority may determine quantitative thresholds for their jurisdiction. We note that in New Zealand there are already quantitative statutory thresholds for an audit. This is not the case in all jurisdictions.
15. We previously discussed to limit the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE for entities reporting below the Tier 1 threshold (i.e. Tiers 2, 3, 4, special purpose). The Tier 1 definitions are attached as an appendix to this agenda item.
16. The NZASB recently increased the upper threshold for Tier 2 public benefit entities to \$33 million of expenditure (so entities reporting total expenditure over that threshold report under Tier 1). This was because the legislative threshold on which the tier 2 threshold is based (i.e., the legislative definition of a "large" entity under the Financial Reporting Act 2013) was amended from \$30 million to \$33 million and this change maintains alignment.
17. The NZAuASB are currently consulting on extending the definition of a public interest entity (PIE) into the auditing standards. This definition in PES 1 currently aligns with tier 1.
18. However, in recent discussions with practitioners, and with some members of our sub-committee, we have heard that extending the use of the tier 1 threshold concept into the auditing standards and /or the ISA (NZ) for LCE may have unintended consequences. The size criteria used for tier 1 reporting requirements may not equate for these other purposes. E.g. some schools and charities reporting under the tier 1 framework may be suited to being audited under the ISA (NZ) for LCE. A charitable entity reporting under the tier 1 framework may be fundamentally very simple (e.g.: large portfolio with many grants given out), and therefore, according to feedback received, the XRB shouldn't prevent the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE in these audits.
19. As at time of writing, there are 26 groups and 81 individual charities on the charities register with total expenditure >\$33million, i.e., Tier 1. From data provided by the OAG, there are 7

schools, 31 council controlled organisations, and 14 licencing and community trusts reporting under Tier 1, amongst the 295 tier 1 reporting entities that the OAG audits.

20. The outcome of the *Public Interest Entity Amendments* consultation may impact our thinking here. i.e., the proposal to expand reporting of Key Audit Matters (KAMs) to all Tier 1 reporting entities. KAMs are not within the scope of the ISA for LCE. The outcome of who is required to report KAMs in New Zealand may have an impact for use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.
21. Taking into account the feedback and previous discussions on the quantitative thresholds, at this stage, we have the following options:
  - Exclude all Tier 1 reporting entities, including large public benefit entities.
  - Not have an added NZ specific quantitative threshold (i.e. just prohibit FMC HLPAs entities, alongside the other specific prohibitions listed by the IAASB).
  - Have some other quantitative threshold – noting that no threshold has been determined at this stage, and none were forthcoming in the survey we ran last year. We welcome any suggestions.

**22. We seek the Boards views on the proposed options for the quantitative threshold, noting that this may be impacted by the outcome of the PIE amendments consultation.**

## Appendix 1

---

As a reminder, the Tier 1 threshold is defined in the standard [XRB A1, Application of the Accounting Standards Framework](#):

### For-profit

A for-profit entity shall report in accordance with Tier 1 For-profit Accounting Requirements if it:

- has public accountability at any time during the reporting period; or
- is a large for-profit public sector entity; or
- is eligible to report in accordance with the accounting requirements of Tier 2 but does not elect to report in accordance with that tier

For the purpose of applying the Tier 1 size criteria, a **for-profit public sector entity** is **large** if it has total expenses over \$30 million

### Public Benefit Entities (PBE)

A PBE shall report in accordance with Tier 1 PBE Accounting Requirements if it:

- has public accountability at any time during the reporting period; or
- is **large**; or
- is eligible to report in accordance with the accounting requirements of another tier but does not elect to report in accordance with that other tier.

For the purpose of applying the Tier 1 size criteria, a PBE is **large** if it has total expenses over \$30 million (\$33 million from periods ending on or after 28 March 2024)

### Public accountability

Public accountability is defined in XRB A1 as follows

- 7 For the purpose of applying the Tier 1 criteria, an entity has public accountability if:
  - (a) it meets the IASB definition of public accountability as specified in paragraph 8 (subject to paragraph 10); or
  - (b) it is deemed to have public accountability in New Zealand in accordance with paragraph 9.
- 8 In accordance with the IASB definition, an entity has public accountability if:
  - (a) its debt or equity instruments are traded in a public market or it is in the process of issuing such instruments for trading in a public market (a domestic or foreign stock exchange or an over-the-counter market, including local and regional markets); or
  - (b) it holds assets in a fiduciary capacity for a broad group of outsiders as one of its primary businesses (most banks, credit unions, insurance companies, securities brokers/dealers, mutual funds and investment banks would meet this second criterion).
- 9 An entity is deemed to have public accountability in New Zealand if:
  - (a) it is an FMC reporting entity or a class of FMC reporting entities that is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” than other FMC reporting entities under section 461K of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013;<sup>2</sup> or
  - (b) it is an FMC reporting entity or a class of FMC reporting entities that is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” by a notice issued by the Financial Markets Authority (FMA) under section 461L(1)(a) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013.
- 10 Notwithstanding paragraph 8(b), an FMC reporting entity is not considered to have public accountability unless it is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” than other FMC reporting entities in accordance with paragraph 9(a) or 9(b).



## ISA (NZ) for LCE: Issues Paper: Part 11

1. This paper highlights key issues to discuss relating to Part 11, *Audit of Service Performance Information*. This is the most significant addition to the international standard to enable the auditor to undertake an audit of service performance information (SPI). This is important as PBE reporting entities are required to prepare SPI (or a “statement of service performance”) alongside their financial statements, and those registered charities and incorporated societies over the audit threshold are required to have their SPI audited.
2. A background to the development of this part is summarised in supplementary agenda item 4.7.
3. We have selected the following specific areas to discuss, but welcome any other feedback:
  - (a) Flow of the standard
  - (b) Objectives of Part 11
  - (c) Responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the service performance information level
  - (d) Paragraphs from NZ AS 1 (Revised) that we won’t include in the ISA (NZ) for LCE (for information purposes only)
  - (e) Essential Explanatory Material (EEM)
  - (f) Auditor’s report

### **(a) Flow of the standard**

4. We seek feedback on Part 11’s integration and functionality within the ISA (NZ) for LCE. This feedback is valuable considering the drafting and alignment principles outlined in supplementary agenda item 4.6 and the background to development in supplementary agenda item 4.7. Part 11 is designed to seamlessly integrate with the existing ISA for LCE, which functions as a standalone auditing standard.
- |   |
|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. <b>We seek the Boards views on how well Part 11 flows and integrates with the existing ISA for LCE, considering its standalone nature as an auditing standard?</b></li> </ol> |
|---|
6. On another matter relating to the flow, we have placed Materiality (part 11.6) after Understanding the Entity (part 11.4) and the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework (part 11.5). This follows the flow of NZ AS 1 (Revised), however is different to the flow of ISA for LCE, which has Materiality (part 5.3) before Understanding (part 6.3).
  7. In agreement with the sub-committee, we recommend placing Understanding the entity first as this ordering is appropriate to the audit of service performance information. We consider that in order to determine the significant elements/aspects of service performance and materiality considerations and/or materiality for service performance information, that an auditor needs to understand the entity and the service performance information first.
- |  |
|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. <b>We seek the Boards views on placing Understanding the Entity requirements ahead of the Materiality requirements?</b></li> </ol> |
|--|

**(b) Objectives of Part 11**

9. In the table below we compare the proposed objective with NZ AS 1 (Revised) and NZ SRE 1. Differing to the objective of NZ AS 1 (Revised), we have added bullet-point (b) to reaffirm that the auditor issues an auditor’s report on the SPI. This broadly aligns what we drafted as the objective of NZ SRE 1 (albeit that NZ SRE 1 is a limited assurance engagement), and the objective also aligns with what was already set out in the illustrative engagement letter and auditor’s report of NZ AS 1 (Revised), i.e., that “The objectives of our audit are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the [financial report/ performance report] as a whole is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion.”

ISA (NZ) for LCE para 11.1.1	NZ AS 1 (Revised) para 6	NZ SRE 1 para 7
<p>The objectives of the auditor are:</p> <p>(a) to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the service performance information is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and</p> <p>(b) to issue an auditor’s report that includes their opinion.</p>	<p>The objective of the auditor is to express a reasonable assurance opinion on whether the service performance information presents fairly, in all material respects the service performance in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.</p>	<p>The objectives of the assurance practitioner are to:</p> <p>(a) obtain limited assurance, primarily by performing enquiry, analytical procedures, and, as the assurance practitioner considers necessary in the circumstances, other procedures, about whether anything has come to their attention that the service performance information individually or collectively is not free from material misstatement, and</p> <p>(b) express a limited assurance conclusion in a written report.</p>

10. In discussion with the sub-committee we explored whether the objective should be aligned with the two step approach in NZ AS 1 and how this interacts with the objective of the ISA for LCE to ensure the objective works in the standalone standard, with various views. Staff recommend that it is not necessary to include the two steps in the objective. This is because the two-step approach is referred to in the in EEM as a way to reach the objective, rather being the objective itself. The EEM is shown on the following page.

*The auditor may achieve the objectives of this Part by considering the following two steps:*

- (a) *Assess whether the following aspects of the service performance information are appropriate and meaningful in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework:*
- *The elements/aspects of service performance that the entity has selected to report on.*
  - *The performance measures and/or descriptions the entity has used to report on what it has done in relation to those elements/aspects of service performance during the reporting period.*
  - *The measurement basis or evaluation method used to measure or evaluate the performance measure and/or description.*
- (b) *Assess whether the reported service performance information fairly reflects the actual service performance and is not materially misstated.*

11. **Does the Board agree with the Objectives as written in the draft standard (at paragraph 11.1.1. of agenda item 4.4.)?**

***(c) Responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the service performance information level***

12. In NZ AS 1 (Revised), auditors are required to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement at the service performance level, and at the assertion level.
13. NZ AS 1 (Revised) does not include requirements on *Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Service Performance Information Level* as NZ AS 1 (Revised) is also applied in conjunction with other ISAs (NZ) therefore a separate section responding to assessed risks of material misstatement at the SPI level was not considered necessary.
14. The question arising is whether when auditors are undertaking procedures for the SPI level and the assertion level, they may be doing the same procedures.
15. We explored this question with the sub-committee in the context of an audit of a LCE. We discussed that there are service performance information level risks that exist. For example, in the misuse of language to over-embellish performance in some areas and downplay poor performance in other areas. Other forms of bias can also exist that can lead to misleading reporting of service performance.
16. Staff recommend the ISA for LCE does require auditors to develop audit responses to service performance information level risks. We have added the following into Part 11.8. This text is based on the section audit procedures responsive to the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level, at paragraph 7.2. of the ISA for LCE, as they are very similar in nature:

## 11.8. Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement

11.8.1. The auditor shall design and implement overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the service performance information level, whether due to fraud or error.

*The auditor's overall responses at the service performance information level, for example, making general changes to the nature, timing or extent of audit procedures, or adjustments to resources assigned or using experts, are based on those risks that relate pervasively to the service performance information. These may include, for example, risks arising from industry, regulatory and other external factors.*

11.8.2. In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the service performance level, the auditor shall:

- (a) Evaluate whether the selection of significant elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods by the entity, particularly those related to subjective measurements, may be indicative of fraudulent reporting of service performance information resulting from management's effort to mislead in the reporting of service performance information; and
- (b) Incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection of the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures.

*Incorporating an element of unpredictability may be achieved by, for example:*

- *Performing substantive procedures on selected elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods not otherwise tested due to their materiality or risk.*
- *Adjusting the timing of audit procedures from that otherwise expected.*
- *Using different sampling methods.*

17. **We seek the Board's views on the section *audit procedures responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement*?**

***(d) Paragraphs from NZ AS 1 (Revised) that we won't include in the ISA (NZ) for LCE***

18. We propose not to include para 42 from NZ AS 1, below, about when service performance information includes information upon which another practitioner has expressed an opinion. In discussion with our committee, we have concluded that this is unlikely to be applicable in the audit of a LCE.
  42. When planning the audit of service performance information, the auditor shall:
    - (c) Where the service performance information includes information upon which another practitioner has expressed an opinion, communicate clearly with the other practitioner, when the auditor intends to use the work of another practitioner about the scope and timing of the work and findings of the other practitioner, and evaluate the sufficiency and appropriateness of evidence obtained and the process for including related information in the service performance information. (Ref: Para. A76)
19. We also will not include paragraph 52 of NZ AS 1 (Revised), below, regarding Key Audit Matters, as this is not applicable in the audit of a less complex entity.

**Key Audit Matters**

52. The auditor may be required or may voluntarily report key audit matters in the auditor's report in accordance with ISA (NZ) 701<sup>29</sup>. If reported, where, in the auditor's judgement matters related to service performance information were of most significance to the audit, key audit matters shall include matters related to service performance. (Ref: Para. A85)

20. **We seek the board's agreement to exclude the two aforementioned requirements of NZ AS 1 (Revised) from Part 11.**

***(e) Essential Explanatory Material (EEM)***

21. Page 4 of supplementary agenda item 4.6 as well as supplementary agenda item 4.7 provides further background on EEM.
22. The decision on what application material to include as EEM is judgemental. In some areas, such as materiality, we have incorporated more EEM to provide additional clarification, as materiality can be complex to apply. The EEM is largely derived from the application material in NZ AS 1 (Revised), with some sections, such as the use of service organisations EEM, based on the ISA for LCE.
23. We have prepared a mapping document at supplementary agenda item 4.9 that maps the Application Material in NZ AS 1 (Revised) to the EEM included in Part 11.
24. A key difference between the EEM included in the draft compared to the Application Material in NZ AS 1, is the omission of extensive examples, in line with the drafting principles. The EEM is therefore less voluminous.
25. Examples of application material in NZ AS 1 (Revised) not included in Part 11 as EEM, include:
  - Examples of what the auditor may consider to assess whether the aspects of service performance information are appropriate and meaningful (para A3 of NZ AS 1 (Revised))
  - Examples of matters that the auditor may include in the audit documentation (para A7 of NZ AS 1 (Revised))

- Types of documents the auditor would read to understand the entity (para A17 of NZ AS 1 (Revised))
- Areas the auditor may consider when evaluating whether the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful (para A37 of NZ AS 1 (Revised))...

26. **We seek the Boards views on the EEM (Essential Explanatory Material) included in Part 11 – are there any areas that you think should have more EEM (taking into account the drafting principles and what is in NZ AS 1 (Revised))?**

### **(f) Auditor’s report**

#### *Modified audit reports for Service Performance Information*

27. We have not replicated the modified audit report illustrations of NZ AS 1 (Revised) in Part 11 of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. We are awaiting the IAASB’s publication of their *Supplemental Guidance on Reporting* in Q2 of 2024. Following this, we will determine whether to integrate the illustrations into the IAASB’s supplemental guidance or include them in a separate guidance document on auditing service performance information.

#### *Auditor’s reports under ISA (NZ) for LCE for the Public Sector*

28. The specified format and content of the illustrative auditor’s report of the ISA for LCE is built into the requirements section of the ISA for LCE.
29. Paragraph 9.4.1. of the standard requires an auditor to report the key elements of an auditor’s report in accordance with the specified format and content of the auditor’s report, unless amendment is required for compliance with “law or regulation”.
30. In New Zealand, the Auditor-General prescribes the layout and wording of an auditor’s report issued by, or on behalf of, the Auditor-General but that the Auditor-General’s auditing standards, while made under legislation, are not themselves “law or regulation” and so may not be interpreted as falling under this definition.
31. In other words, the OAG has interpreted that paragraph 9.4.1 prevents them from customising the layout and wording of auditor’s report for the public sector.

#### *Current auditing standard (ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised))*

32. There is a difference between ISA (NZ) (700) (Revised) *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* and the ISA for LCE. The ISA for LCE is more restrictive as to how the auditor’s report is presented (the auditor having to report in accordance with a specified format and content), whereas ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised) is more flexible.
33. The flexibility of ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised) means that the auditor’s report does not have a requirement to follow a “specified format and content”, rather to include “at a minimum, each of the [given] elements” of the auditor’s report which are set out in paragraph 50 of ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised) (such as a title, an addressee, an opinion, basis for opinion, responsibilities etc.).
34. In introducing the illustrative auditor’s reports, Para A19 of ISA (NZ) 700 states:  
*“The Appendix to this ISA (NZ) contains illustrations of auditor’s reports on financial statements, incorporating the elements set out in paragraphs 20–49. With the exception of the Opinion and Basis for Opinion sections, this ISA (NZ) does not establish requirements for ordering the elements of the auditor’s report. However, this ISA (NZ) requires the use of*

*specific headings, which are intended to assist in making auditor's reports that refer to audits that have been conducted in accordance with ISAs (NZ) more recognisable, particularly in situations where the elements of the auditor's report are presented in an order that differs from the illustrative auditor's reports in the Appendix to this ISA (NZ)."*

35. Because of this flexibility, the Auditor-General is able to develop an illustrative auditor's report that incorporates the elements of ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised), but also elements specific to the public sector.
36. Appendix 1 of [AG ISA\(NZ\) 700](#) sets out the elements of an auditor's report issued by the Auditor General.
37. The key elements in the auditor's report issued by the Auditor-General, which are not in the ISAs (NZ) include:
  - An introduction stating that the auditor has been appointed by the Auditor-General. The Public Audit Act 2001 (section 32) deals with the appointment of auditors.
  - A "dual" opinion is included in auditor's reports issued by, or on behalf of, the Auditor-General, that separately opines on:
    - i. the fair presentation of the audited material; and
    - ii. whether the audited material complies with generally accepted accounting practice in New Zealand and has been prepared in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework].
  - A separate independence section under the heading "Independence". In an ISA (NZ) auditor's report this independence section is not disclosed in a separate section.
  - A statement that describes what is meant by the term "misstatement" (*"Misstatements are differences or omissions of amounts or disclosures, and can arise from fraud or error."*).
  - Reference to "the decisions of readers" being influenced by misstatements, rather than "the economic decisions of users" in an ISA (NZ) auditor's report. This is because the Auditor-General's audit report is addressed to readers and the readers decisions will not be limited to "economic decisions".
  - All auditor's reports issued by, or on behalf of, the Auditor-General include a statement that the auditor is not responsible for evaluating the security and controls over the electronic publication of the audited information. The primary reason for this statement is that audited information is often published by public entities in electronic form and may also be included on one or more websites.

*Possible solutions for ISA (NZ) for LCE*

38. There are a couple of possible solutions:
  1. Do nothing - leave the standard as is, maintaining alignment with the international standard. However, doing nothing may prevent the OAG from including public sector specific elements in the auditor's report, thus it would be difficult for the OAG to be able to adopt this standard.
  2. Amend paragraph NZ9.4.1.(a). to enable the OAG to include public sector specific elements in their auditor's report, but ensuring they maintain the elements of the auditor's report from the ISA (NZ) for LCE. This solution would be in the public interest, and allow a more wide-spread adoption of this standard. We have presented this option to the OAG who confirm this solution works for audits subject to the OAG's mandate.



39. The proposed amendment to paragraph NZ9.4.1.(a) is:

NZ9.4.1. The auditor shall report in accordance with the specified format and content below unless:

(a) Amendment to the auditor's report is required for compliance with a specific layout or wording of the auditor's report required by law or regulation of a jurisdiction or in the Auditor-General's Auditing Standards. When the layout or wording of the auditor's report is prescribed by law or regulation or in the Auditor-General's Auditing Standards, the auditor's report shall refer to this ISA (NZ) for LCE only if the elements of the specified format and content illustrated below are included; or

...

40. **We seek the Boards view on the proposed amendment to enable the OAG to add public sector relevant elements into the auditor's report?**

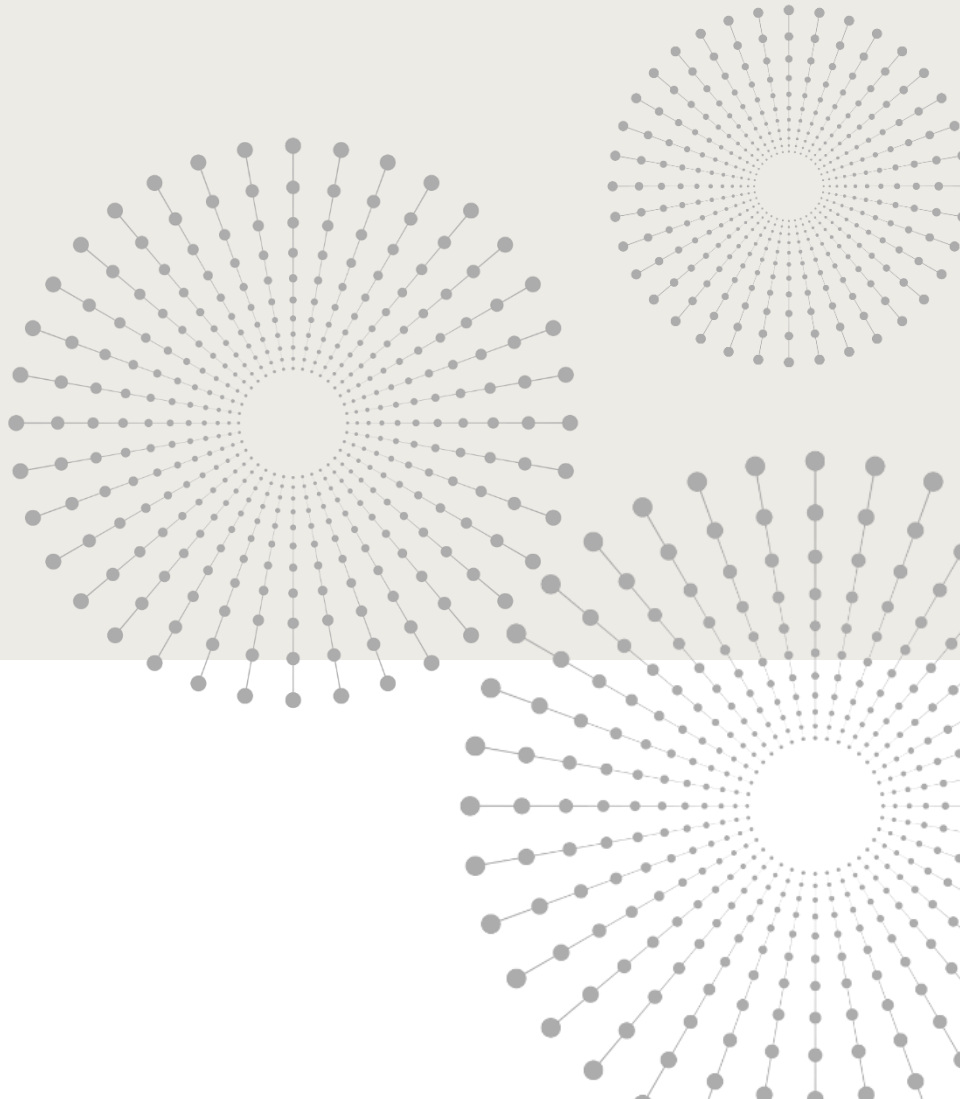


# International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) For Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities

The ISA (NZ) for LCE

**Exposure Draft**

**Submissions close (DATE)**



2024



# **THE INTERNATIONAL STANDARD ON AUDITING (NEW ZEALAND) FOR AUDITS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESS COMPLEX ENTITIES**

## **Legal Status of Standard**

This Standard was issued on [DATE] by the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board of the External Reporting Board (XRB) pursuant to section 12(b) of the Financial Reporting Act 2013.

This Standard is secondary legislation for the purposes of the Legislation Act 2019. An auditor, that is required to apply this Standard, is required to apply the Standard in accordance with the application date which is set out in the Commencement and application section, below.

## **Copyright**

© External Reporting Board (“XRB”) 2024

This XRB exposure draft contains copyright material and reproduces, with the permission of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC), parts of the corresponding international standard issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (“IAASB”), and published by IFAC. Reproduction within New Zealand in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgement of the source.

Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within New Zealand should be addressed to the Chief Executive, External Reporting Board at the following email address: [enquiries@xrb.govt.nz](mailto:enquiries@xrb.govt.nz)

All existing rights (including copyrights) in this material outside of New Zealand are reserved by IFAC, with the exception of the right to reproduce for the purposes of personal use or other fair dealing. Further information can be obtained from IFAC at [www.ifac.org](http://www.ifac.org) or by writing to [permissions@ifac.org](mailto:permissions@ifac.org)

ISBN [Content to be added]

# THE INTERNATIONAL STANDARD ON AUDITING (NEW ZEALAND) FOR AUDITS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESS COMPLEX ENTITIES

## CONTENTS

---

	Page
<b>COMMENCEMENT AND APPLICATION .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>HISTORY OF AMENDMENTS .....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>PREFACE TO THE ISA (NZ) FOR LCE.....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>A. AUTHORITY OF THE ISA (NZ) FOR AUDITS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESS COMPLEX ENTITIES .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>1. FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS, GENERAL PRINCIPLES AND OVERARCHING REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>19</b>
1.1. Effective Date .....	19
1.2. Relevant Ethical Requirements and Firm-Level Quality Management.....	19
1.3. Overall Objectives of the Auditor .....	20
1.4. Fundamental Concepts and General Principles for Performing the Audit.....	21
1.5. Fraud .....	22
1.6. Laws and Regulations .....	23
1.7. Related Parties .....	24
1.8. General Communications with Management and Those Charged with Governance .....	25
1.9. Specific Documentation Requirements .....	26
<b>2. AUDIT EVIDENCE AND DOCUMENTATION.....</b>	<b>27</b>
2.1. Objectives .....	27
2.2. Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence .....	27
2.3. Information to be Used as Audit Evidence .....	27
2.4. General Documentation Requirements .....	29
<b>3. ENGAGEMENT QUALITY MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>32</b>
3.1. Objective .....	32
3.2. The Engagement Partner's Responsibilities .....	32
3.3. Specific Documentation Requirements .....	36
<b>4. ACCEPTANCE OR CONTINUANCE OF AN AUDIT ENGAGEMENT AND INITIAL AUDIT ENGAGEMENTS .....</b>	<b>37</b>
4.1. Objectives .....	37
4.2. Preconditions for an Audit .....	38
4.3. Considerations in Engagement Acceptance or Continuance .....	38
4.4. Terms of the Audit Engagement.....	39
4.5. Initial Audit Engagements .....	40
4.6. Specific Communication Requirements.....	41
4.7. Specific Documentation Requirements .....	41
<b>5. PLANNING.....</b>	<b>43</b>
5.1. Objectives .....	43
5.2. Planning Activities.....	43

5.3.	Materiality .....	46
5.4.	Specific Communication Requirements.....	48
5.5.	Specific Documentation Requirements .....	48
<b>6.</b>	<b>RISK IDENTIFICATION AND ASSESSMENT .....</b>	<b>49</b>
6.1.	Objectives .....	49
6.2.	Procedures for Identifying and Assessing Risks and Related Activities .....	49
6.3.	Understanding Relevant Aspects of the Entity .....	51
6.4.	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement .....	59
6.5.	Evaluation of the Appropriateness of Using the ISA (NZ) for LCE .....	63
6.6.	Specific Communication Requirements.....	63
6.7.	Specific Documentation Requirements .....	63
<b>7.</b>	<b>RESPONDING TO ASSESSED RISKS OF MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT .....</b>	<b>65</b>
7.1.	Objectives .....	65
7.2.	Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Financial Statement Level .....	65
7.3.	Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Assertion Level .....	66
7.4.	Specific Focus Areas .....	73
7.5.	Accumulation of Misstatements.....	82
7.6.	Specific Communication Requirements.....	83
7.7.	Specific Documentation Requirements .....	84
<b>8.</b>	<b>CONCLUDING .....</b>	<b>85</b>
8.1.	Objectives .....	85
8.2.	Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit .....	85
8.3.	Analytical Procedures that Assist When Forming an Overall Conclusion .....	85
8.4.	Subsequent Events.....	86
8.5.	The Auditor's Evaluations and Other Activities to Support the Auditor's Conclusion.....	88
8.6.	Written Representations .....	89
8.7.	Taking Overall Responsibility for Managing and Achieving Quality .....	92
8.8.	Specific Communication Requirements.....	92
8.9.	Specific Documentation Requirements .....	93
<b>9.</b>	<b>FORMING AN OPINION AND REPORTING.....</b>	<b>95</b>
9.1.	Objectives .....	95
9.2.	Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements .....	95
9.3.	Form of Opinion .....	96
9.4.	Auditor's Report.....	97
9.5.	Modifications to the Opinion .....	100
9.6.	Other Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report .....	107
9.7.	Comparative Information – Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements .... .....	109
9.8.	Other Information.....	111
9.9.	Specific Documentation Requirements .....	112
<b>10.</b>	<b>AUDITS OF GROUP FINANCIAL STATEMENTS.....</b>	<b>113</b>
10.1.	Objective .....	113
10.2.	Planning Activities .....	113
10.3.	Materiality.....	114

10.4.	Understanding the Group and Its Environment, the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework and the Group's System of Internal Control.....	115
10.5.	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement.....	115
10.6.	Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement.....	116
10.7.	Specific Communication Requirements.....	117
10.8.	Specific Documentation Requirements.....	117
<b>[NZ]11.</b>	<b>AUDIT OF SERVICE PERFORMANCE INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>118</b>
11.1.	Objectives .....	118
11.2.	Terms of the Audit Engagement .....	119
11.3.	Planning Activities.....	119
11.4.	Understanding Relevant Aspects of the Entity and the Service Performance Information 120	
11.5.	Applicable Financial Reporting Framework .....	121
11.6.	Materiality.....	122
11.7.	Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement.....	123
11.8.	Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement .....	124
11.9.	Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence.....	126
11.10.	Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit of Service Performance Information .....	127
11.11.	Written Representations .....	127
11.12.	Forming an Opinion on the Service Performance Information .....	127
11.13.	Form of Opinion .....	128
11.14.	Auditor's Report.....	129
11.15.	Modifications to the Opinion.....	133
11.16.	Other Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report.....	134
11.17.	Comparative Information.....	135
11.18.	Other Information .....	135
11.19.	Specific Focus Areas .....	136
11.20.	Specific Communication Requirements.....	136
11.21.	Specific Documentation Requirements.....	137
	<b>APPENDIX 1 .....</b>	<b>138</b>
	<b>[NZ] APPENDIX 2.....</b>	<b>150</b>
	<b>[NZ] APPENDIX 2A .....</b>	<b>153</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 3 .....</b>	<b>156</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 4 .....</b>	<b>157</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 5.....</b>	<b>160</b>
	<b>APPENDIX 6 .....</b>	<b>162</b>
	<b>[NZ] APPENDIX 7.....</b>	<b>163</b>
	<b>[NZ] APPENDIX 7A .....</b>	<b>165</b>
	<b>ACCOMPANYING ATTACHMENT: CONFORMITY TO THE INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING FOR AUDITS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESS COMPLEX ENTITIES .....</b>	<b>177</b>

## Commencement and application

### When standard takes effect (Section 27 Financial Reporting Act 2013)

1. This standard takes effect on the 28th day after the date of its publication under the Legislation Act 2019<sup>1</sup>.

### Accounting period in relation to which standards commence to apply (section 28 Financial Reporting Act 2013)

2. The accounting periods in relation to which this standard commences to apply are:
  - (a) for an **early adopter**, those accounting periods, following and including, the **early adoption accounting period**.
  - (b) for any other auditor, those accounting periods following, and including, the first accounting period that begins on or after the **mandatory date**.

3. In paragraph 2:

**early adopter** means an auditor that applies this standard for an early adoption accounting period.

**early adoption accounting period** means the accounting period:

- (a) that begins before the mandatory date but has not ended or does not end before this standard takes effect (and to avoid doubt, that period may have begun before this standard takes effect); and
- (b) for which the early adopter:
  - (i) first applies this standard for an audit engagement of a less complex entity; and
  - (ii) discloses in the auditor's report for that accounting period that this standard has been applied for that period.

**mandatory date** means [DATE].

---

<sup>1</sup> The standard was published on [Date]

## History of amendments

### Table of pronouncements – ISA (NZ) for LCE

This table lists the pronouncements establishing and amending the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

<b>Pronouncements</b>	<b>Date approved</b>	<b>Mandatory date</b>
International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities	TBC	[TBC]15 December 2025.

## Preface to the ISA (NZ) for LCE

- P.1. This standard (i.e., the ISA (NZ) for LCE) has been designed to achieve reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, for audits of financial statements of less complex entities (LCEs) in the private and public sectors. The standard has been developed to reflect the nature and circumstances of an audit of the financial statements of an LCE and result in the consistent performance of a quality audit engagement. This standard is premised on the basis that the firm is subject to Professional and Ethical Standard 3<sup>2</sup> or to national requirements that are at least as demanding. A quality audit engagement is achieved by planning and performing the engagement and reporting on it in accordance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements. Achieving the objective of this standard involves exercising professional judgement and maintaining professional scepticism.
- P.2. This standard is written in the context of an audit of a complete set of general purpose financial statements of an LCE as contemplated in Part A. It may also be adapted as necessary in the circumstances of the engagement to an audit of a complete set of special purpose financial statements, or an audit of a single financial statement or of a specific element, account or item of a financial statement, only if the entity is an LCE as set out in Part A.
- P.3. When an audit engagement is undertaken using this standard, the International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) do not apply to the engagement.
- P.4. Part A sets out the authority for determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. Decisions about the required or permitted use of this standard, including descriptions of the type of entities for which an audit in accordance with this standard may be used rest with legislative and regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority.
- P.5. If this standard is used for audit engagements other than those contemplated in Part A, the auditor is not permitted to represent compliance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE in the auditor's report.
- P.6. This standard does not override local law or regulation that governs audits of financial statements in a particular jurisdiction. The ISA (NZ) for LCE does not address the responsibilities of the auditor that may exist in legislation or regulation. Such responsibilities may differ from those established in this standard and it is the responsibility of the auditor to ensure compliance with all relevant legal, regulatory, or professional obligations.

### The Applicable Financial Reporting Framework

- P.7. The financial statements subject to audit are those of the entity, prepared by management of the entity with oversight from those charged with governance. Law or regulation may establish the responsibilities of management, and those charged with governance, in relation to financial reporting. This standard does not impose responsibilities on management or those charged with governance and does not override law or regulation that govern their responsibilities. However, an audit in accordance with this standard is conducted on the premise that management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance have acknowledged certain responsibilities that are fundamental to the conduct of the audit. The audit of the financial statements does not relieve management or those charged with governance of their responsibilities.
- NZP.7.A. In New Zealand, those charged with governance generally have responsibility for ensuring an entity meets its legal obligations in relation to the preparation of the financial statements, often delegating the process of financial reporting to management, while retaining ultimate

---

<sup>2</sup> Professional and Ethical Standard (PES) 3, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews for Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*



responsibility. Auditors shall use professional judgement and knowledge of New Zealand's legal and governance standards to assess if this standard's requirements pertain to management, those charged with governance, or both. In this ISA (NZ) for LCE, "management" should be read hereafter as "management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance."

*Management's and Those Charged with Governance's Responsibilities for Preparation of the Financial Statements*

*The extent of management's responsibilities, or the way that they are described, may differ across jurisdictions. While there may be differences in the extent of those responsibilities or how they are described, an audit in accordance with this standard is conducted on the premise that management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, have acknowledged and understood that they have responsibility:*

- *For the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, including where relevant, their fair presentation;*
- *For such internal control as management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and*
- *To provide the auditor with unrestricted access to all information of which they are aware that is relevant to the preparation of the financial statements, additional information the auditor may request, and unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.*

- P.8. The applicable financial reporting framework often encompasses financial reporting standards established by an authorised or recognised standard setting organisation, or legislative or regulatory requirements.
- P.9. The requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework determine the form and content of the financial statements. Although the framework may not specify how to account for or disclose all transactions or events, the framework ordinarily embodies sufficiently broad principles that can serve as a basis for developing and applying accounting policies consistent with the framework's concepts underlying the requirements.
- P.10. Some financial reporting frameworks are fair presentation frameworks, while others are compliance frameworks. This standard covers both frameworks. The term "fair presentation framework" is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework and:
- (a) Acknowledges explicitly or implicitly that, to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements, it may be necessary for management to provide disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework; or
  - (b) Acknowledges explicitly that it may be necessary for management to depart from a requirement of the framework to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements. Such departures are expected to be necessary only in extremely rare circumstances.

The term "compliance framework" is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework, but does not contain the acknowledgements in (a) or (b) above.

*[NZ] The Examples of financial reporting requirements that are designed to achieve fair presentation in New Zealand include the following issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board:*

- *New Zealand equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards Reduced Disclosure Regime (NZ IFRS RDR);*
- *Public Benefit Entity Standards Reduced Disclosure Regime (PBE Standards RDR);*
- *Reporting Requirements for Tier 3 Public Sector Entities (Tier 3 (PS) Standard);*
- *Reporting Requirements for Tier 3 Not-for-Profit Entities (Tier 3 (NFP) Standard).*

*Examples of financial reporting requirements that only require compliance with the requirements (compliance frameworks) in New Zealand include the following issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board:*

- *Reporting Requirements for Tier 4 Public Sector Entities (Tier 4 (PS) Standard);*
- *Reporting Requirements for Tier 4 Not-for-Profit Entities (Tier 4 (NFP) Standard).*

### **An Audit of Financial Statements**

- P.11. The purpose of an audit is to enhance the degree of confidence of intended users in the financial statements. This is achieved by the expression of an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework. As the basis for the auditor's opinion, this standard requires the auditor to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.
- P.12. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance. It is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level. However, reasonable assurance is not an absolute level of assurance, because there are inherent limitations of an audit which result in most of the audit evidence on which the auditor draws conclusions and bases the auditor's opinion being persuasive rather than conclusive.

#### *Inherent Limitations of an Audit*

*Audit risk is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk. The assessment of risks of material misstatement is based on audit procedures to obtain information necessary for that purpose and evidence obtained throughout the audit. The assessment of risks of material misstatement is a matter of professional judgement, rather than a matter capable of precise measurement.*

*Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, there is an unavoidable risk that some material misstatements of the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with this standard. Accordingly, the subsequent discovery of a material misstatement resulting from fraud or error does not by itself indicate a failure to conduct an audit in accordance with this standard. However, the inherent limitations of an audit are not a justification for the auditor to be satisfied with less than persuasive audit evidence.*

### **Format of the ISA (NZ) for LCE**

P.13. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZP.13. The ISA (NZ) for LCE includes:

- Part A, which sets out the authority for determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.
- Part 1, which sets out the fundamental concepts, general principles and overarching requirements to be applied throughout the audit.

- (c) Part 2, which sets out the general requirements for audit evidence and documentation, as well as the overall objective of the audit.
- (d) Part 3, which sets out the auditor's and engagement partner's obligations and responsibilities for quality management in an audit of an LCE.
- (e) Parts 4 to 9, which follow the flow of an audit engagement, and set out the detailed requirements for the audit. Each of these Parts also includes specific communication and documentation requirements as necessary.
- (f) Part 10, which sets out the special considerations that apply to an audit of group financial statements.
- (NZ g) Part 11, which sets out the considerations that apply to an audit of service performance information.
- (h) Appendices, which include the glossary of terms used in this standard, assertions, an illustrative engagement letter and an illustrative representation letter, as well as other relevant supporting materials for implementation of the requirements within this standard.

P.14. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZP.14. The content of Parts 1–11 includes: Parts 1–11

- (a) Introductory material in a separate box setting out the content and scope of that Part (but does not create any additional obligations for the auditor).
- (b) Objective(s), which link the requirements of that Part and the overall objective of the audit.
- (c) Requirements to be met, except where the requirement is conditional, and the condition does not exist. Requirements are expressed using "shall."
- (d) Essential explanatory material (EEM) designed to provide further explanation relevant to a sub-section or a specific requirement. All EEM is presented in italics within separate blue boxes. There are two types of EEM: general introductory EEM that explains the context of the section that follows, and EEM specific to the requirement directly above it.

Certain requirements and EEM are only applicable when there are engagement team members other than the engagement partner. Such requirements and EEM are presented in a box with the header "Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner".

P.15. Definitions, describing the meanings attributed to certain terms for the purpose of this standard, can be found in the Glossary of Terms in Appendix 1. The definitions assist in the consistent application and interpretation of the requirements, and are not intended to override definitions that may be established for other purposes, whether in law or regulation.

P.16. For the purposes of this standard, the use of "LCE" or "entity" also refers to a group (i.e., where the audit is an audit of group financial statements).

NZP.16A. For the purposes of this standard, the use of "financial statements" also refers to "service performance information" and where relevant "entity information" (i.e., where an auditor is applying Part 11).

#### *Non-Authoritative Support Materials*

P.17. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZP.17. The XRB or NZAuASB may issue non-authoritative material to support the implementation of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

**Public Sector Entities**

P.18. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZP.18. This standard is relevant to engagements in the public sector, when the considerations set out in the Authority in Part A apply. The public sector auditor's responsibilities, however, may be affected by the audit mandate, or by obligations on public sector entities arising from law, regulation or other authority (such as ministerial directives, government policy requirements, or resolutions of the legislature), which may encompass a broader scope than an audit of financial statements in accordance with this standard. These additional responsibilities are not dealt with in this standard. They may be dealt with in the Auditor-General's Auditing Standards or in other guidance developed by the Auditor-General.

P.19. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZP.19. The applicable financial reporting framework used by a public sector entity is determined by the legislative and regulatory frameworks relevant to each jurisdiction or within each geographical area. Matters that may be considered in the entity's application of the applicable financial reporting requirements, and how it applies in the context of the nature and circumstances of the entity and its environment, include whether the entity applies a full accrual basis of accounting or a cash basis of accounting in accordance with the Public Sector PBE Accounting Standards issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board, or a hybrid.

P.20. Ownership of a public sector entity may not have the same relevance as in the private sector because decisions related to the entity may be made outside of the entity as a result of political processes. Therefore, management may not have control over certain decisions that are made. Matters that may be relevant include understanding the ability of the entity to make unilateral decisions, and the ability of other public sector entities to control or influence the entity's mandate and strategic direction.

P.21. When appropriate, additional considerations specific to public sector entities have been included in EEM.

## **A. Authority of the ISA (NZ) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities**

### *Content of this Part*

Part A sets out the Authority for determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

The ISA (NZ) for LCE is designed to enable the achievement of the overall objectives of the auditor, given the typical nature and circumstances of an LCE as described in this Part. There are limitations to the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE that are designated into three categories: specific prohibitions, qualitative characteristics, and quantitative thresholds. Part A also describes the responsibilities for legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority to support the appropriate use of this standard. The use of “LCE” or “entity” also refers to a group (i.e., where the audit is an audit of group financial statements).<sup>3</sup>

The requirements in this ISA (NZ) for LCE have been designed to be proportionate to the typical nature and circumstances of an audit of an LCE (i.e., they do not address complex matters or circumstances). If the ISA (NZ) for LCE is used for an audit outside the intended scope of this standard, compliance with the requirements of the ISA (NZ) for LCE will not be sufficient for the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support a reasonable assurance opinion.

The Supplemental Guidance for the Authority of the Standard (the Authority Supplemental Guide) provides further guidance for legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority when addressing their respective responsibilities as described in this Part. In addition, the Authority Supplemental Guide further explains matters that may be relevant for firms and auditors in determining whether the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE is appropriate.

### **Limitations for Using the ISA (NZ) for LCE**

*Limitations for using the ISA (NZ) for LCE are designated into three categories:*

- *Specific classes of entities for which the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE is prohibited (i.e., specific prohibitions);*
- *Qualitative characteristics that describe an LCE, and if not exhibited by an entity would ordinarily preclude the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE for the audit of the financial statements of that entity; and*
- *Quantitative thresholds to be determined by legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority in each jurisdiction.*

*In determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, all three categories are to be considered.*

<sup>3</sup> A “group” is a reporting entity for which group financial statements are prepared and “group financial statements” are financial statements that include the financial information of more than one entity or business unit through a consolidation process. The term “consolidation process” as used in the ISA (NZ) for LCE is not intended to have the same meaning as “consolidation” or “consolidated financial statements” as defined or described in financial reporting frameworks. Rather, the term “consolidation process” refers more broadly to the process used to prepare group financial statements. The Glossary of Terms (**Appendix 1**) describes the meanings attributed to certain terms for the purpose of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, including the meaning of group and group financial statements.

*Specific Prohibitions*

*Paragraph A.1. sets out the classes of entities for which the use of this standard is specifically prohibited.*

A.1. The ISA (NZ) for LCE shall not be used if:

- (a) Law or regulation prohibits the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE or specifies the use of auditing standards other than the ISA (NZ) for LCE for the audit of the financial statements in that jurisdiction.
- (b) The entity is a listed entity.
- (c) The entity falls into one of the following classes:
  - (i) An entity one of whose main functions is to take deposits from the public;
  - (ii) An entity one of whose main functions is to provide insurance to the public;
  - (iii) [NZ] It is an FMC reporting entity or a class of FMC reporting entities that is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” than other FMC reporting entities under section 461K of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013;
  - (iv) [NZ] It is an FMC reporting entity or a class of FMC reporting entities that is considered to have a “higher level of public accountability” by a notice issued by the Financial Markets Authority (FMA) under section 461L(1)(a) of the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013; or
  - (iii) A class of entities where use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE is prohibited for that specific class of entity by a legislative or regulatory authority or relevant local body with standard-setting authority in the jurisdiction.
- (d) The audit is an audit of group financial statements (group audit) and:
  - (i) Any of the group’s individual entities or business units meet the criteria as described in paragraph A.1.(b) or A.1.(c); or
  - (ii) Component auditors are involved, except when the component auditor’s involvement is limited to circumstances in which a physical presence is needed for a specific audit procedure for the group audit (e.g., attending a physical inventory count or physically inspecting assets or documents).

*A single legal entity may be organised with more than one business unit, for example, a company with operations in multiple locations, such as a store with multiple branches. When those business units have characteristics such as separate locations, separate management, separate general ledger and the financial information is aggregated in preparing the single legal entity’s financial statements, such financial statements meet the definition of group financial statements because they include the financial information of more than one entity or business unit through a consolidation process.*

*In some cases, a single legal entity may configure its information system to capture financial information for more than one product or service line for legal or regulatory reporting or other management purposes. In these circumstances, the entity’s financial statements are not group financial statements because there is no aggregation of the financial information of more than one entity or business unit through a consolidation process. Further, capturing separate information (e.g., in a sub-ledger) for legal or regulatory reporting or other management purposes does not create separate entities or business units (e.g., divisions) for purposes of this ISA (NZ) for LCE.*

*Component Auditors*

*A component auditor is an auditor who performs audit work related to a component<sup>4</sup> for purposes of the group audit. A component auditor is a part of the engagement team for a group audit. Component auditors may be from a network firm, a firm that is not a network firm, or the group auditor's firm (e.g., another office within the group auditor's firm).*

*In some circumstances, the group auditor may perform centralised testing on classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures, or may perform audit procedures related to a component. In these circumstances, the group auditor is not considered a component auditor.*

*Part 3 contains requirements in relation to engagement quality, including relevant ethical requirements, and the direction and supervision of the members of the engagement team, and the review of their work.*

- A.2. The classes in paragraph A.1.(a) (b) and (d) are outright prohibitions and cannot be modified. Legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority can modify each class described in paragraph A.1.(c) but a class cannot be removed.

*A.1.(c) sets out some classes of entities that may exhibit public interest characteristics. Entities that have public interest characteristics could embody a level of complexity in fact or appearance and are specifically prohibited from using the ISA (NZ) for LCE. Modifications can be made by adding a class of entities to the list of prohibited entities, permitting specific sub-sets within a class to be able to use this standard or using quantitative thresholds to prohibit use of this standard. Legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority may subsequently remove or amend modifications that they have made.*

*Qualitative Characteristics*

*The requirements in this ISA (NZ) for LCE have been designed to be proportionate to the typical nature and circumstances of an audit of an LCE.*

*The ISA (NZ) for LCE has not been designed to address:*

- *Complex matters or circumstances relating to the nature and extent of the entity's business activities, operations and related transactions and events relevant to the preparation of the financial statements.*
- *Topics, themes and matters that increase, or indicate the presence of, complexity, such as those relating to ownership of the entity, corporate governance arrangements of the entity, or policies, procedures or processes established by the entity.*

*Also, the ISA (NZ) for LCE does not include any requirements addressing:*

- *Procedures or matters typically relevant to listed entities, including reporting on segment information or key audit matters.*
- *When the auditor intends to use the work of internal auditors, as this would ordinarily not be applicable to an audit of an LCE.*
- *When the auditor intends to use a report provided by a service auditor of a service organisation either as audit evidence about the design and implementation of controls at the service organisation (i.e., a type 1 or type 2 report), or as audit evidence that controls at the service organisation are operating effectively (i.e., a type 2 report), as this would ordinarily not be applicable to an audit of an LCE.*

<sup>4</sup> A component is an entity, business unit, function or business activity, or some combination thereof, determined by the group auditor for the purposes of planning and performing audit procedures in a group audit.

- A.3. The following list describes characteristics of an LCE for the purpose of determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. The list is not exhaustive nor intended to be absolute (including numerical indicators), and other relevant matters may also need to be considered. Each of the qualitative characteristics may not, on its own, be sufficient to determine whether the ISA (NZ) for LCE is appropriate or not in the circumstances. Therefore, the matters described in the list are intended to be considered both individually and in combination. For the purpose of group audits, these considerations shall apply to both the group and each of its individual entities and business units.

Business Activities, Business Model & Industry	<p>The entity's business activities, business model, or the industry in which the entity operates, do not give rise to significant pervasive business risks.</p> <p>There are no specific laws or regulations that govern the business activities that add complexity (e.g., prudential requirements).</p> <p>The entity's transactions result from few lines of business or revenue streams.</p>
Organisational Structure and Size	<p>The organisational structure is relatively straightforward, with few reporting lines or levels and a small key management team (e.g., 5 individuals or less).</p>
Ownership Structure	<p>The entity's ownership structure is straightforward and there is clear transparency of ownership and control, such that all individual owners and beneficial owners are known.</p>
Nature of Finance Function	<p>The entity has a centralised finance function, including centralised activities related to financial reporting.</p> <p>There are few employees involved in financial reporting roles (e.g., 5 individuals or less).</p>
Information Technology (IT)	<p>The IT environment of the entity, including its IT applications and IT processes, is straightforward.</p> <p>The entity uses commercial software and does not have the ability to make any programme changes other than to configure the software (e.g., the chart of accounts, reporting parameters or thresholds).</p> <p>Access to the software is generally limited to one or two designated individuals for the purpose of making the configurations.</p> <p>Few formalised general IT controls are needed in the entity's circumstances.</p>
Application of the Financial Reporting Framework and Accounting Estimates	<p>Few accounts or disclosures in the financial statements of the entity necessitate the use of significant management judgement in applying the requirements of the financial reporting framework.</p> <p>The entity's financial statements ordinarily do not include accounting estimates that involve the use of methods, models, assumptions, or data, that are complex.</p>



Additional Characteristics Relevant for Group Audits	
For group audits, the following qualitative characteristics are to be considered in addition to those above:	
Group Structure and Activities	The group has few entities or business units (e.g., 5 or less). Entities or business units within the group operate in jurisdictions with similar characteristics, for example laws or regulations and business practices.
Access to Information or People	Group management will be able to provide the engagement team with access to information and unrestricted access to persons within the group as determined necessary by the group auditor.
Consolidation Process	The group has a simple consolidation process. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intercompany or other consolidation adjustments are not complex;</li> <li>• Financial information of all entities or business units has been prepared in accordance with similar accounting policies applied to the group financial statements; and</li> <li>• All entities or business units have the same financial reporting period-end as that used for group financial reporting.</li> </ul>

*Notwithstanding that professional judgement is applied in determining whether this standard is appropriate to use, if there is uncertainty about whether an audit meets the criteria as set out in this Authority, the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE is not appropriate.*

#### Quantitative Thresholds

A.4. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZA.4. The ISA (NZ) for LCE shall not be used if:

(a) **TBC**

*[NZ] When the auditor is determining whether the ISA (NZ) for LCE is appropriate to use, quantitative thresholds established are to be considered in addition to the specific prohibitions in paragraph A.1. and the qualitative characteristics in paragraph A.3.*

#### Responsibilities of Legislative or Regulatory Authorities or Relevant Local Bodies

*Decisions about the required or permitted use of the IAASB's International Standards (including the International Standards on Auditing and the ISA for LCE) rest with legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority (such as regulators or oversight bodies, jurisdictional / national auditing standard setters, professional accountancy organisations or others as appropriate) in individual jurisdictions.*

*As part of the local adoption and implementation process, it is anticipated that legislative or regulatory authorities or relevant local bodies with standard-setting authority:*

- *May add or modify the classes of entities in paragraph A.1.(c) as set out in paragraph A.2.*
- *Determine quantitative thresholds described in paragraph A.4.*

*In doing so, the specific prohibitions and qualitative characteristics should be considered, as well as other specific needs that may be relevant in the jurisdiction.*

## **1. Fundamental Concepts, General Principles and Overarching Requirements**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 1 sets out the:

- The relevant ethical requirements and obligations for firm-level quality management.
- Overall objectives of the auditor. Each Part within this standard contains an objective for planning and performing the audit, and provides a link between the requirements within that Part and the overall objectives of the auditor. The objectives within each Part assist the auditor to understand the intended outcomes of the procedures contained in that Part.
- Fundamental concepts, general principles, and overarching requirements applicable to the engagement, including professional judgement and professional scepticism.
- Overarching requirements in relation to fraud, law or regulation, related parties, and communications with management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance.
- General communication requirements that apply to all Parts. Within individual Parts there may be additional specific communication requirements.

### *Scope of this Part*

The concepts, principles and overarching requirements in this Part apply throughout the audit engagement.

### **1.1. Effective Date**

1.1.1. [Deleted by NZAuASB, refer to Commencement and Application section on page xx]

### **1.2. Relevant Ethical Requirements and Firm-Level Quality Management**

#### *Relevant Ethical Requirements for an Audit of Financial Statements*

1.2.1. The auditor shall comply with relevant ethical requirements, including those pertaining to independence, for financial statement audit engagements.

*[NZ] Relevant ethical requirements in New Zealand ordinarily comprise the provisions of Professional and Ethical Standard 1, International Code of Ethics for Assurance Practitioners (including International Independence Standards) (New Zealand) related to an audit of financial statements.*

*Professional and Ethical Standard 1 (PES 1) establishes the fundamental principles of ethics, which are:*

- *Integrity;*
- *Objectivity;*
- *Professional competence and due care;*
- *Confidentiality; and*
- *Professional behaviour.*

*The fundamental principles of ethics establish the standard of behaviour expected of an assurance practitioner. PES 1 provides a conceptual framework that establishes the approach*

*which an assurance practitioner is required to apply when identifying, evaluating and addressing threats to compliance with the fundamental principles.*

### *Firm-Level Quality Management*

#### 1.2.2. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ1.2.2. The engagement partner shall be a member of a firm that applies PES 3<sup>8</sup> and PES 4<sup>9</sup>, or national requirements that are at least as demanding as PES 3 and PES 4.

*[NZ] Systems of quality management, including the policies or procedures, are the responsibility of the firm. PES 3, applies to all firms that perform engagements governed by the Standards of the External Reporting Board (XRB). If an engagement quality review is required by the firm's policies or procedures established in accordance with PES 3, then PES 4 applies. PES 4 deals with the appointment and eligibility of the engagement quality reviewer, and the performance and documentation of the engagement quality review.*

### 1.3. Overall Objectives of the Auditor

1.3.1. The overall objectives of the auditor when conducting an audit of financial statements using the ISA (NZ) for LCE are to:

- (a) Obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, to enable the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework; and
- (b) Report on the financial statements, and communicate as required by this standard, in accordance with the auditor's findings.

1.3.2. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of the entire text of this standard to understand its objectives and to apply its requirements properly.

1.3.3. To achieve the overall objectives, the auditor shall use the objectives stated in the relevant Parts in planning and performing the audit, to:

- (a) Determine whether any audit procedures in addition to those required by the relevant Part are necessary to achieve the objectives stated in this standard; and
- (b) Evaluate whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained.

*The auditor is required to use the objectives to evaluate whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained in the context of the overall objectives of the auditor. If as a result the auditor concludes that the audit evidence is not sufficient and appropriate, then the auditor may follow one or more of the following approaches:*

- *Evaluate whether further relevant audit evidence has been, or will be, obtained as a result of complying with requirements from other Parts;*
- *Extend the work performed in applying one or more requirements; or*
- *Perform other procedures judged by the auditor to be necessary in the circumstances.*

1.3.4. If an objective in a Part cannot be achieved, the auditor shall evaluate whether this prevents the auditor from achieving the overall objectives of the auditor and thereby requires the auditor to:

<sup>8</sup> Professional and Ethical Standard (PES) 3 *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*

<sup>9</sup> Professional and Ethical Standard (PES) 4 *Engagement Quality Reviews*

- (a) Modify the terms of engagement and perform the audit and report in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand); or
- (b) Modify the auditor's opinion or withdraw from the engagement (where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation).

Failure to achieve an objective represents a significant matter requiring documentation.

#### 1.4. Fundamental Concepts and General Principles for Performing the Audit

1.4.1. The auditor shall comply with all relevant requirements unless, in exceptional circumstances, the auditor judges it necessary to depart from a relevant requirement. In such circumstances the auditor shall perform alternative procedures to achieve the aim of that requirement. The need for the auditor to depart from a relevant requirement is expected to arise only where the requirement is for a specific procedure to be performed and, in the specific circumstances of the audit, that procedure would be ineffective in achieving the aim of the requirement.

*[NZ] A requirement is not relevant only in the cases where the entire Part is not relevant (for example, if the audit is not a group audit, or if the audit does not include the audit of service performance information; or the requirement is conditional and the condition does not exist (for example, the requirement to modify the auditor's opinion where there is an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, and there is no such inability).*

1.4.2. The auditor shall not represent compliance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE in the auditor's report unless all relevant requirements in this standard have been met or the circumstances in paragraph 1.4.1. apply.

#### *Professional Judgement*

1.4.3. The auditor shall exercise professional judgement in planning and performing the audit.

*Professional judgement is essential to the proper conduct of an audit. This is because interpretation of relevant ethical requirements and this standard and the informed decisions required throughout the audit cannot be made without the application of relevant knowledge and experience to the facts and circumstances.*

*The distinguishing feature of the professional judgement expected of an auditor is that it is exercised by an auditor whose training, knowledge and experience have been sufficiently developed to achieve the necessary competencies for reasonable judgements.*

*The exercise of professional judgement in any particular case is based on the facts and circumstances that are known to the auditor.*

*Significant professional judgements made in reaching conclusions on significant matters arising during the audit are required to be documented in accordance with the requirements of Part 2 of this standard.*

#### *Professional Scepticism*

1.4.4. The auditor shall plan and perform the audit with professional scepticism recognising that circumstances may exist that cause the financial statements to be materially misstated.

1.4.5. The auditor shall design and perform procedures in a way that is not biased towards obtaining audit evidence that may be corroborative or towards excluding audit evidence that may be contradictory.

*Professional scepticism includes being alert to, for example:*

- *Audit evidence that contradicts other audit evidence obtained.*

- *Information that brings into question the reliability of documents and responses to enquiries to be used as audit evidence.*
- *Conditions that may indicate possible fraud.*
- *Circumstances that suggest the need for audit procedures in addition to those required by this standard.*

*Professional scepticism is necessary to the critical assessment of audit evidence. This includes questioning contradictory audit evidence and the reliability of documents and responses to enquiries and other information obtained from management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance. It also includes consideration of the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence obtained in the light of the circumstances.*

*The auditor cannot be expected to disregard past experience of the honesty and integrity of the entity's management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance. Nevertheless, a belief that management and those charged with governance are honest and have integrity does not relieve the auditor of the need to maintain professional scepticism or allow the auditor to be satisfied with less than persuasive audit evidence when obtaining reasonable assurance.*

*Conditions of the engagement can create pressures on the engagement team that may impede the appropriate exercise of professional scepticism when designing and performing audit procedures and when evaluating audit evidence.*

## 1.5. Fraud

*The primary responsibility for the prevention and detection of fraud rests with both management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance of the entity. Although fraud is a broad legal concept, for the purposes of this standard, the auditor is concerned with fraud that causes a material misstatement in the financial statements.*

*Misstatements in the financial statements can arise from either fraud or error. The distinguishing factor between fraud and error is whether the underlying action that results in the misstatement of the financial statements is intentional or unintentional. Two types of intentional misstatements are relevant to the auditor – misstatements resulting from fraudulent financial reporting and misstatements resulting from misappropriation of assets. Although the auditor may suspect or, in rare cases, identify the occurrence of fraud, the auditor does not make legal determinations of whether fraud has actually occurred.*

*An auditor conducting an audit in accordance with this standard is responsible for obtaining reasonable assurance that the financial statements taken as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than the risk of not detecting one resulting from error even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with this standard. This is because fraud may involve sophisticated and carefully organised schemes designed to conceal it, such as forgery, deliberate failure to record transactions, or intentional misrepresentations being made to the auditor.*

*When obtaining reasonable assurance, the auditor is responsible for:*

- *Maintaining professional scepticism throughout the audit;*
- *Considering the potential for management override of controls; and*
- *Recognising the fact that audit procedures that are effective for detecting error may not be effective in detecting fraud.*

1.5.1. The auditor shall address the risk of fraud when:

- (a) Identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. In doing so, the auditor shall evaluate whether information obtained from the procedures to identify and assess risks, and related activities, indicates that one or more fraud risk factors are present;<sup>11</sup>
- (b) Obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence through designing and implementing appropriate responses to assessed risks of material misstatement, including risks of material misstatement due to fraud; and
- (c) Responding appropriately to fraud or suspected fraud identified during the audit.

*Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*The public sector auditor's responsibilities relating to fraud may be a result of law, regulation or other authority applicable to public sector entities or separately covered by the auditor's mandate. Consequently, the public sector auditor's responsibilities may not be limited to consideration of risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, but may also include a broader responsibility to consider risks of fraud.*

*Auditor Unable to Continue the Engagement*

1.5.2. If, as a result of a misstatement resulting from fraud or suspected fraud, the auditor encounters exceptional circumstances that bring into question the auditor's ability to continue performing the audit, the auditor shall determine the legal and professional responsibilities applicable in the circumstances or consider whether it is appropriate to withdraw, where withdrawal is possible under law or regulation.

*Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*In many cases in the public sector, the option of withdrawing from the engagement may not be available to the auditor due to the nature of the mandate or public interest considerations.*

**1.6. Laws and Regulations**

*It is the responsibility of management, with the oversight of those charged with governance where appropriate, to ensure that the entity's operations are conducted in accordance with the provisions of laws and regulations, including compliance with the provisions of laws and regulations that determine the reported amounts and disclosures in an entity's financial statements.*

*The requirements in this standard are designed to assist the auditor in identifying material misstatement of the financial statements due to non-compliance with laws and regulations. However, the auditor is not responsible for preventing non-compliance and cannot be expected to detect non-compliance with all laws and regulations. The auditor's focus in an audit of the financial statements is on circumstances when non-compliance with laws or regulations results in a material misstatement of the financial statements. In this regard, the auditor's responsibilities are in relation to compliance with two different categories of laws and regulations and are distinguished as follows:*

- *The provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognised to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements (e.g., tax and pension laws and regulations); and*

<sup>11</sup> Appendix 4 sets out fraud risk factors relevant to less complex entities.



- *Other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, but compliance with which may be fundamental to the operating aspects of the business, to an entity's ability to continue its business, or to avoid material penalties (e.g., compliance with the terms of an operating license, compliance with regulatory solvency requirements, or compliance with environmental regulations), i.e., non-compliance with such laws and regulations may therefore have a material effect on the financial statements.*

1.6.1. During the audit, the auditor shall remain alert to the possibility that performing audit procedures may bring instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations to the auditor's attention.

*In the absence of identified or suspected non-compliance, the auditor is not required to perform audit procedures regarding the entity's compliance with laws and regulations, other than what is required by this standard.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*In the public sector, there may be additional audit responsibilities with respect to the consideration of laws and regulations which may relate to the audit of financial statements or may extend to other aspects of the entity's operations.*

#### *Reporting to an Appropriate Authority Outside the Entity*

1.6.2. If the auditor has identified or suspects non-compliance with laws and regulations, including fraud, the auditor shall determine whether law, regulation or relevant ethical requirements:

- Require the auditor to report to an appropriate authority outside the entity.
- Establish responsibilities under which reporting to an appropriate authority outside the entity may be appropriate in the circumstances.

*Reporting identified or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations, including fraud, to an appropriate authority outside the entity may be required or appropriate in the circumstances because:*

- *The auditor has determined reporting is an appropriate action to respond to identified or suspected non-compliance in accordance with relevant ethical requirements; or*
- *Law, regulation or relevant ethical requirements provide the auditor with the right to do so.*

## **1.7. Related Parties**

1.7.1. During the audit, the auditor shall remain alert for:

- Information about the entity's related parties, including circumstances involving a related party with dominant influence;
- Arrangements or other information that may indicate the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor; and
- Significant transactions outside the entity's normal course of business.

*Many related party transactions occur in the normal course of business. In such circumstances, they may carry no higher risk of material misstatement of the financial statements than similar transactions with unrelated parties. However, the nature of related party relationships and transactions may, in some circumstances, give rise to higher risks of material misstatement of the financial statements than transactions with unrelated parties. Related parties, by virtue of their ability to exert control or*



*significant influence, may be in a position to exert dominant influence over the entity or its management. Consideration of such behaviour is relevant when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud.*

*Many financial reporting frameworks establish specific accounting and disclosure requirements for related party relationships, transactions and balances to enable users of the financial statements to understand their nature and actual or potential effects on the financial statements. Where the financial reporting framework has established such requirements, the auditor has a responsibility to perform audit procedures to identify, assess and respond to the risks of material misstatement arising from the entity's failure to appropriately account for or disclose related party relationships, transactions or balances in accordance with the requirements of the framework. Even if the applicable financial reporting framework has not established such requirements, the auditor nevertheless needs to obtain an understanding of the entity's related party relationships and transactions to be able to conclude whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation for fair presentation frameworks or are not misleading for compliance frameworks.*

## **1.8. General Communications with Management and Those Charged with Governance**

- 1.8.1. The auditor shall determine the appropriate person(s) within the entity's governance structure with whom to communicate.
- 1.8.2. The auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance the relevant ethical requirements, including those related to independence, that the auditor applies for the audit engagement.
- 1.8.3. The auditor shall communicate, on a timely basis, with management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance.

*Governance structures vary by jurisdiction and by entity, reflecting influences such as different cultural and legal backgrounds, and size and ownership characteristics. Governance is the collective responsibility of a governing body, such as a board of directors, a supervisory board, partners, proprietors, a committee of management, a council of governors, trustees or equivalent.*

*There may be other cases where it is not clear with whom to communicate, for example in some family-owned businesses, some not-for-profit organisations and some government entities (e.g., the governance structure may not be defined). In such cases the auditor may need to discuss and agree with management or the engaging party with whom communications should be made.*

- 1.8.4. Specific matters to be communicated are required throughout this standard. The auditor shall use professional judgement in determining the appropriate form, timing, and general content of the communications with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance. When determining the form and timing of communication, the auditor shall consider:
- (a) Legal requirements for communication; and
  - (b) The significance of the matters to be communicated.

*The appropriate form and timing of communications will vary with the circumstances of the audit, and may be affected by the significance and nature of the matter, and the actions expected to be taken by management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance.*

*Communication with management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, often may occur in a less structured manner and matters may be communicated orally. This standard requires that the auditor exercises professional judgement to determine when oral communication of a matter would not be adequate and communication in writing is appropriate. In addition, certain matters are required to be communicated in writing, as set out in this standard.*

- 1.8.5. In some cases, all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, for example, an LCE where a single owner manages the entity and no one else has a governance role. In these cases, if matters required by this standard are communicated with person(s) with management responsibilities, and those person(s) also have governance responsibilities, the matters need not be communicated again with those same person(s) in their governance role. The auditor shall nonetheless be satisfied that communication with person(s) with management responsibilities adequately informs all of those with whom the auditor would otherwise communicate in their governance capacity.
- 1.8.6. Where the responses to enquiries of management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance about a particular matter are inconsistent, the auditor shall investigate the inconsistency.

#### *Specific Communications in Relation to Fraud*

- 1.8.7. If the auditor has identified fraud or has obtained information that indicates that fraud may exist, the auditor shall communicate these matters, unless prohibited by law or regulation, on a timely basis to the appropriate level of management in order to inform those with primary responsibility for the prevention and detection of fraud of matters relevant to their responsibilities.

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*In the public sector, requirements for reporting fraud, whether or not discovered through the audit process, may be subject to specific provisions of the audit mandate or related law, regulation or other authority.*

- 1.8.8. Unless prohibited by law or regulation, the auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance, on a timely basis, if the auditor has identified or suspects fraud involving:
- (a) Management, unless those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity;
  - (b) Employees who have significant roles in the entity's system of internal control; or
  - (c) Others where the fraud results in a material misstatement in the financial statements.
- 1.8.9. If the auditor suspects fraud involving management, the auditor shall discuss with those charged with governance the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures necessary to complete the audit.

### **1.9. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

- 1.9.1. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation communications about fraud made to management, those charged with governance, regulators and others.

## **2. Audit Evidence and Documentation**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 2 sets out the requirements to be applied throughout the audit for:

- Audit evidence.
- Documentation. Within individual Parts there may also be additional specific documentation requirements.

### *Scope of this Part*

The requirements in this Part apply throughout the audit engagement.

### **2.1. Objectives**

2.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are to:

- (a) Design and perform audit procedures in such a way as to enable the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be able to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion; and
- (b) Prepare documentation that provides a sufficient and appropriate record of the basis for the auditor's report and provides evidence that the audit was planned and performed in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE and applicable law or regulation.

### **2.2. Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence**

2.2.1. To obtain reasonable assurance, the auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level thereby enabling the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion.

2.2.2. The auditor shall design and perform audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

*Sufficiency is the measure of the quantity of audit evidence. It is affected by the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement (the higher the assessed risks, the more audit evidence is likely to be required) and also the quality of the audit evidence (the higher the quality, the less may be required). Obtaining more audit evidence, however, may not compensate if it is of poor quality.*

*Appropriateness is the measure of the quality of the audit evidence, that is its relevance and reliability in providing support for the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based.*

*Most of the auditor's work in forming the auditor's opinion consists of obtaining and evaluating audit evidence. Whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level, and thereby enable the auditor to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion, is a matter of professional judgement.*

### **2.3. Information to be Used as Audit Evidence**

*Audit evidence to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion is obtained by designing and performing procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement (see*

Part 6) and responding to assessed risks of material misstatement (see Part 7), as well as procedures in other Parts to comply with the requirements of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

Audit procedures to obtain audit evidence can include inspection, observation, confirmation, recalculation, reperformance and analytical procedures, often in some combination, in addition to enquiry. Although enquiry may provide important audit evidence, and may even produce evidence of a misstatement, enquiry alone ordinarily does not provide sufficient audit evidence of the absence of a material misstatement at the assertion level, nor of the operating effectiveness of controls.

Audit evidence is cumulative in nature and is primarily obtained from audit procedures performed during the audit, but may also include information from other sources, such as:

- Previous audits (provided that the auditor has confirmed there are no changes);
- Other engagements performed for the client; and
- The firm's quality management procedures for acceptance and continuance.

Audit evidence may come from inside or outside the entity (the entity's accounting records are an important source of audit evidence), the work of management's expert, and includes information that both supports and corroborates management's assertions, as well as contradicts such assertions.

#### *Automated Tools and Techniques (ATT)*

ATT, for the purpose of this standard, are IT-enabled processes that involve the automation of methods and procedures, for example the analysis of data using modelling and visualization, or drone technology to observe or inspect assets.

In applying this standard, an auditor may design and perform audit procedures manually or through the use of ATT, and either technique can be effective. Regardless of the tools and techniques used, the auditor is required to comply with the requirements in this standard.

Using ATT can supplement or replace manual or repetitive tasks. In certain circumstances, when obtaining audit evidence, an auditor may determine that the use of ATT to perform certain audit procedures may result in more persuasive audit evidence relative to the assertion being tested. In other circumstances, performing audit procedures may be effective without the use of ATT.

The use of ATT may potentially create biases or a general risk of overreliance on the information or output of the audit procedure performed. As powerful as these tools may be, they are not a substitute for the auditor's knowledge and professional judgement. Further, although the auditor may have access to a wide array of data, including from varying sources (i.e., increased quantity), the exercise of professional scepticism remains necessary to critically assess audit evidence arising from the use of data and from the outputs from using ATT.

- 2.3.1. When designing and performing audit procedures, the auditor shall consider the relevance and reliability of the information to be used as audit evidence, including information from external information sources.

*Relevance deals with the logical connection with, or bearing upon, the purpose of the audit procedure and, where appropriate, the assertion under consideration. The relevance of the information may be affected by the direction of testing.*

*The reliability of information to be used as audit evidence is influenced by its source and nature, as well as the circumstances under which it was obtained, including the controls over its preparation and maintenance where relevant. Generally, the reliability of information is increased when it is obtained from independent sources outside of the entity, by the auditor directly, is an original*

*document rather than a copy and is written rather than oral information. However, circumstances may exist that could affect these generalisations.*

2.3.2. When using information produced by the entity, the auditor shall evaluate whether the information is sufficiently reliable for the auditor's purposes including, as necessary in the circumstances:

- (a) Obtaining evidence about the accuracy and completeness of the information; and
- (b) Evaluating whether the information is sufficiently precise and detailed for the auditor's purposes.

*Obtaining audit evidence about the accuracy and completeness of such information may be performed concurrently with the actual audit procedure applied to the information when obtaining such audit evidence is an integral part of the audit procedure itself. In other situations, the auditor may have obtained audit evidence of the accuracy and completeness of such information by testing controls over the preparation and maintenance of the information. In some situations, however, the auditor may determine that additional audit procedures are needed.*

2.3.3. Unless the auditor has reason to believe the contrary, the auditor may accept records and documents as genuine. If conditions identified during the audit cause the auditor to believe that a document may not be authentic or that terms in a document have been modified but not disclosed to the auditor, the auditor shall investigate further and determine the effect on the rest of the audit evidence obtained.

2.3.4. The auditor shall determine what modifications or additions to audit procedures are necessary if:

- (a) Audit evidence obtained from one source is inconsistent with that obtained from another; or
- (b) The auditor has doubts about the reliability of information to be used as audit evidence.

## **2.4. General Documentation Requirements**

*The ISA (NZ) for LCE sets out general documentation requirements in this Part and, as appropriate, specific documentation requirements in other Parts. A documentation requirement applies only to requirements that are relevant in the circumstances.*

2.4.1. The auditor shall prepare audit documentation on a timely basis that is sufficient to enable an experienced auditor, having no previous connection with the audit, to understand:

- (a) The nature, timing and extent of the audit procedures performed in accordance with this standard and applicable legal and regulatory requirements, including recording:
  - (i) The identifying characteristics of the specific items or matters tested;
  - (ii) Who performed the work and the date such work was completed;
  - (iii) Who reviewed the audit work performed and the date and extent of such review.
- (b) The results of the audit procedures performed, and the audit evidence obtained; and
- (c) Significant matters arising during the audit, the conclusions reached thereon, and significant professional judgements made in reaching those conclusions.

*Audit documentation provides evidence that the audit complies with the ISA (NZ) for LCE. The form, content and extent of audit documentation depends on the nature and circumstances of the entity and the procedures being performed.*

*Audit documentation may be in paper or electronic format. Oral explanations, by the auditor on their own, do not adequately support the work performed by the auditor or the conclusions reached, but may be used to explain or clarify information contained in the audit documentation.*

*It is not necessary to include superseded drafts of working papers or financial statements in the audit documentation.*

*It is not necessary or practicable for the auditor to document every matter considered, or professional judgement made, in an audit. However, the auditor is required to prepare audit documentation that provides a sufficient and appropriate record of the basis for the auditor's report and provides evidence that the audit was planned and performed in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE and applicable law or regulation. Further, it is unnecessary for the auditor to document separately (as in a checklist, for example) compliance with matters for which compliance is demonstrated by documents included within the audit file.*

#### *Significant Matters*

*Judging the significance of a matter requires professional judgement and the analysis of the facts and circumstances. Examples of significant matters include matters giving rise to significant risks, areas where the financial statements could be materially misstated, circumstances where the auditor has had difficulty in applying the necessary audit procedures, or any findings that could result in a modified opinion.*

#### *When the Engagement Partner Performs All the Audit Work*

*In the case of an audit where the engagement partner performs all the audit work, the documentation will not include matters that might have to be documented solely to inform or instruct members of an engagement team, or to provide evidence of review by other members of the team (e.g., there will be no matters to document relating to team discussions or supervision). Nevertheless, the engagement partner complies with the overriding requirement to prepare audit documentation that can be understood by an experienced auditor, as the audit documentation may be subject to review by external parties for regulatory or other purposes.*

#### *Automated Tools and Techniques*

*This standard does not differentiate between different tools and techniques that the auditor may use to design and perform audit procedures, for example using manual or automated techniques with respect to what is required to be documented. Regardless of the tools and techniques used, the auditor is required to comply with relevant documentation requirements.*

- 2.4.2. If the auditor identified information that is inconsistent with the auditor's conclusion regarding a significant matter, the auditor shall document how the inconsistency was addressed by the auditor.
- 2.4.3. If, in exceptional circumstances, the auditor judges it necessary to depart from a relevant requirement of this standard, the auditor shall document how the alternative audit procedures performed achieve the aim of that requirement, and the reasons for the departure.
- 2.4.4. The auditor shall document discussions of significant matters with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, and others, including the nature of the significant matters discussed and when and with whom the discussions took place.

#### *Documentation of Communications*

- 2.4.5. Where matters required to be communicated by this standard are communicated orally, the auditor shall include them in the audit documentation, and when and to whom they were communicated.

2.4.6. Where matters have been communicated in writing, the auditor shall retain a copy of the communication as part of the audit documentation. Written communications need not include all matters that arose during the audit.



### **3. Engagement Quality Management**

#### *Content of this Part*

Part 3 sets out the responsibilities for managing and achieving quality for the audit engagement.

#### *Scope of this Part*

In accordance with PES 3, the firm is responsible for designing, implementing, and operating a system of quality management for audits of financial statements, that provides the firm with reasonable assurance that:

- The firm and its personnel fulfil their responsibilities in accordance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements, and conduct engagements in accordance with such standards and requirements; and
- Engagement reports issued are appropriate in the circumstances.

The engagement team, led by the engagement partner, is responsible within the context of the firm's system of quality management for:

- Implementing the firm's responses to quality risks that are applicable to the audit engagement using information communicated by, or obtained from, the firm;
- Determining whether additional responses are needed at the engagement level beyond those in the firm's policies or procedures given the nature and circumstances of the engagement; and
- Communicating to the firm information from the audit engagement that is required to be communicated by the firm's policies or procedures to support the design, implementation, and operation of the firm's system of quality management.

The requirements in this Part apply throughout the audit engagement.

#### **3.1. Objective**

3.1.1. The objective of the auditor is to manage quality at the engagement level to obtain reasonable assurance that quality has been achieved such that:

- (a) The auditor has fulfilled the auditor's responsibilities, and has conducted the audit, in accordance with this standard and applicable legal and regulatory requirements; and
- (b) The auditor's report issued is appropriate in the circumstances.

#### **3.2. The Engagement Partner's Responsibilities**

##### *Leadership Responsibilities for Managing and Achieving Quality*

3.2.1. The engagement partner shall take:

- (a) Overall responsibility for managing and achieving quality on the audit engagement, including being sufficiently and appropriately involved throughout the audit engagement such that the engagement partner has the basis for determining whether the significant judgements made, and conclusions reached are appropriate in the circumstances; and
- (b) Responsibility for clear, consistent and effective actions being taken that reflect the firm's commitment to quality.

*The engagement partner's responsibility for managing and achieving quality is supported by a firm culture that demonstrates a commitment to quality.*



### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

3.2.2. In taking overall responsibility for managing and achieving quality on the audit engagement, the engagement partner shall determine that the nature, timing and extent of direction, supervision and review is:

- (a) Responsive to the nature and circumstances of the engagement and the resources assigned; and
- (b) Planned and performed in accordance with the firm's policies or procedures, this standard, relevant ethical requirements and regulatory requirements.

#### *Sufficient and Appropriate Involvement*

*Being sufficiently and appropriately involved throughout the audit engagement when procedures, tasks or actions have been assigned to other members of the engagement team may be demonstrated by the engagement partner in different ways, including:*

- *Informing assignees about the nature of their responsibilities and authority, the scope of the work being assigned and the objectives thereof; and to provide any other necessary instructions and relevant information.*
- *Direction and supervision of the assignees.*
- *Review of the assignees' work to evaluate the conclusions reached.*

#### *Direction, Supervision and Review*

*The approach to direction, supervision and review may be tailored depending on, for example:*

- *The engagement team member's previous experience with the entity and the area to be audited.*
- *The assessed risks of material misstatement. A higher assessed risk of material misstatement may require a corresponding increase in the extent and frequency of the direction and supervision of engagement team members and a more detailed review of their work.*
- *The competence and capabilities of the individual engagement team members performing the audit work.*

3.2.3. The engagement partner shall take responsibility for establishing and communicating to the members of the engagement team the expected behaviour of the engagement team members, including emphasising:

- (a) That all engagement team members are responsible for contributing to the management and achievement of quality at the engagement level;
- (b) The importance of professional ethics, values and attitudes;
- (c) The importance of open and robust communication within the engagement team, and supporting the ability of engagement team members to raise concerns without fear of reprisal; and
- (d) The importance of exercising professional scepticism throughout the audit engagement.

*In addressing the requirements in paragraphs 3.2.2. and 3.2.3., the engagement partner may communicate directly to other members of the engagement team and reinforce this communication through conduct and actions (e.g., leading by example).*

#### *Relevant Ethical Requirements*

3.2.4. The engagement partner shall have an understanding of the relevant ethical requirements, including those related to independence, that are applicable given the nature and circumstances of the audit engagement.

3.2.5. If matters come to the engagement partner's attention that indicate that a threat to compliance with relevant ethical requirements exists or relevant ethical requirements have been breached, the engagement partner shall take action, including:

- (a) Following the firm's policies or procedures to evaluate the threat; and
- (b) Consulting with others in the firm.

*If there are no others in the firm to consult with, the engagement partner may consult with others outside the firm such as experienced practitioners in other firms or the professional accountancy body where the engagement partner is a member.*

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

3.2.6. Throughout the audit engagement, the engagement partner shall:

- (a) Take responsibility for other members of the engagement team having been made aware of relevant ethical requirements and the firm's related policies or procedures for identifying, evaluating, and addressing threats to compliance with relevant ethical requirements; and
- (b) Remain alert, through observation and making enquiries as necessary, for breaches of relevant ethical requirements by members of the engagement team.

#### *Engagement Resources*

3.2.7. Taking into account the nature and circumstances of the audit and the firm's related policies or procedures, the engagement partner shall:

- (a) Determine that:
  - (i) Sufficient and appropriate resources are assigned or made available to the engagement team in a timely manner; and
  - (ii) Members of the engagement team, and any auditor's external experts, collectively have the appropriate competence and capabilities, including sufficient time, to perform the audit engagement.
- (b) If the conditions in (a) are not met, the engagement partner shall take appropriate action.

#### *Other Engagement Partner Responsibilities*

3.2.8. The engagement partner shall:

- (a) Obtain an understanding of the information from the firm's monitoring and remediation process, as communicated by the firm, including, as applicable, the information from the monitoring and remediation process of the network and across the network firms, and:

- (i) Determine the relevance and effect of that information on the audit engagement; and
  - (ii) Take appropriate action; and
- (b) Remain alert for matters that may be relevant to the firm's monitoring and remediation process and communicate to those responsible for the process.

3.2.9. The engagement partner shall:

- (a) Take responsibility for differences of opinion being addressed and resolved in accordance with the firm's policies or procedures;
- (b) Take responsibility for consultations being undertaken in accordance with the firm's related policies or procedures, or where deemed necessary on difficult or contentious matters;
- (c) Determine that conclusions reached with respect to differences of opinion and difficult or contentious matters are documented, agreed with the party consulted, and implemented; and
- (d) Not date the auditor's report until any differences of opinion are resolved.

*Forming an objective view on the appropriateness of the judgements made in the course of the audit can present practical problems when the same individual also performs the entire audit. If unusual issues are involved, it may be desirable to consult with other suitably experienced auditors or the professional accountancy body.*

*Consultation may be appropriate, or required by the firm's policies or procedures, when there are:*

- *Issues that are complex or unfamiliar;*
- *Significant risks;*
- *Significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business or that otherwise appear to be unusual;*
- *Limitations imposed by management; or*
- *Non-compliance with law or regulation.*

*Differences of opinion may arise within the engagement team, or between the engagement team and the engagement quality reviewer, or even with individuals performing activities within the firm's system of quality management such as those responsible for providing consultation.*

*In considering matters related to differences of opinion, or difficult or contentious matters, the engagement partner may also consider whether the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE continues to be appropriate.*

3.2.10. For audit engagements for which an engagement quality review is required, the engagement partner shall determine that an engagement quality reviewer has been appointed and:

- (a) Cooperate with the engagement quality reviewer;
- (b) Discuss significant matters and significant judgements arising during the audit with the engagement quality reviewer; and
- (c) Not date the auditor's report before the engagement quality review is complete.

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

3.2.11. The engagement partner shall review audit documentation at appropriate points in time during the audit, including documentation of:

- (a) Significant matters;
- (b) Significant judgements and the conclusions reached; and
- (c) Other matters that, in the engagement partner's professional judgement, are relevant to the engagement partner's responsibilities.

*The engagement partner exercises professional judgement in determining matters to review, for example, based on:*

- *The nature and circumstances of the audit engagement.*
- *Which engagement team member performed the work.*
- *Matters from recent inspection findings.*
- *The requirements of the firm's policies or procedures.*

3.2.12. The engagement partner shall review, prior to their issuance, formal written communications to management, those charged with governance or regulatory authorities.

### **3.3. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

3.3.1. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation:

- (a) Matters identified, relevant discussions, and conclusions reached with respect to fulfilment of responsibilities for relevant ethical requirements, including applicable independence requirements.
- (b) If the audit engagement is subject to an engagement quality review, that the engagement quality review has been completed on or before the date of the auditor's report.

## **4. Acceptance or Continuance of an Audit Engagement and Initial Audit Engagements**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 4 sets out the auditor's responsibilities for:

- Agreeing the terms of the audit engagement with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance. This includes establishing that certain preconditions for an audit are present.
- Determining that use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE is appropriate for the audit engagement.

Part 4 also addresses activities related to initial audit engagements.

### *Scope of this Part*

Part A of this standard sets out the authority for determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. This Part sets out the engagement partner's obligations for use of this standard as part of the firm's acceptance or continuance procedures for an audit engagement of an LCE.

The information and audit evidence gathered during client acceptance and continuance procedures is used to make the determination that the ISA (NZ) for LCE is appropriate for the audit engagement, and informs the auditor's procedures when planning the audit, and for risk identification and assessment.

The Preface sets out that this standard is premised on the basis that the firm is subject to PES 3 or to national requirements that are at least as demanding. PES 3 requires the firm to establish quality objectives that address the acceptance and continuance of client relationships and specific engagements. In addition, compliance with PES 3 may require firms to have policies or procedures to address other matters of relevance to this Part.

Audit engagements may only be accepted when the auditor considers that relevant ethical requirements such as independence and professional competence and due care will be satisfied, and the preconditions for an audit are present. In addition, the auditor considers the performance of non-assurance services for the audit client and whether these services are permissible.

If the audit is an initial engagement, this Part also sets out the auditor's responsibilities relating to opening balances.

### **4.1. Objectives**

4.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are:

- (a) To accept or continue an audit engagement only when the basis upon which it is to be performed has been agreed, through:
  - (i) Establishing whether the preconditions for an audit are present; and
  - (ii) Confirming that there is a common understanding between the auditor and management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, of the terms of the audit engagement.
- (b) For initial audit engagements, to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether:
  - (i) Opening balances contain misstatements that materially affect the current period's financial statements, and

- (ii) Appropriate accounting policies reflected in the opening balances have been consistently applied in the current period's financial statements, or changes thereto are appropriately accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

## 4.2. Preconditions for an Audit

### 4.2.1. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ4.2.1. In order to establish whether the preconditions for an audit are present, the auditor shall:

- (a) Determine whether the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the financial statements is acceptable;
- (b) Obtain the agreement of those charged with governance that they acknowledge and understands their responsibility on behalf of the entity:
  - (i) For the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, including where relevant their fair presentation;
  - (ii) For such controls as those charged with governance, and where appropriate management, determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
  - (iii) To provide the auditor with:
    - a. Access to all information of which those charged with governance, and where appropriate management, is aware that is relevant to the preparation of the financial statements such as records, documentation and other matters;
    - b. Additional information that the auditor may request from those charged with governance, and where appropriate management for the purpose of the audit; and
    - c. Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

### 4.2.2. [Amended by the NZ AuASB]

NZ4.2.2. If the preconditions for an audit are not present the auditor shall discuss the matter with those charged with governance. Unless required by law or regulation to do so, the auditor shall not accept the proposed audit engagement:

- (a) If the auditor has determined that the financial reporting framework to be applied in the preparation of the financial statements is unacceptable; or
- (b) If the agreement of those charged with governance that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility has not been obtained.

4.2.3. If management or those charged with governance impose a limitation on the scope of the auditor's work such that the auditor believes that the limitation will result in the auditor disclaiming the opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall not accept such a limited engagement as an audit engagement, unless required by law or regulation to do so.

## 4.3. Considerations in Engagement Acceptance or Continuance

*Performing acceptance or continuance procedures before planning commences assists the auditor in identifying and evaluating events or circumstances that may adversely affect the auditor's ability to plan and perform the current engagement.*

4.3.1. The engagement partner shall determine that:

- (a) The firm's policies or procedures regarding acceptance and continuance of the audit engagement have been followed;<sup>12</sup> and
- (b) Conclusions reached regarding acceptance and continuance of the audit engagement are appropriate, including that the audit engagement can be undertaken using the ISA (NZ) for LCE in accordance with Part A of this standard.

*Part A sets out the matters relevant to the engagement partner for determining the appropriate use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, in particular in relation to the limitations for using this standard.*

*Information and audit evidence gathered during client acceptance and continuance procedures may be used to make the determination about use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. Further information may also be obtained when performing risk identification and assessment procedures that may change the engagement partner's initial determination about use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE in accordance with this Part. Part 6 (see paragraph 6.5.1.) requires the engagement partner to determine whether the ISA (NZ) for LCE continues to be appropriate for the nature and circumstances of the entity being audited during the risk identification and assessment process. Consideration of further information throughout the audit may change the engagement partner's determination about the appropriateness of the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.*

4.3.2. In some cases, law or regulation of the relevant jurisdiction prescribes the layout or wording of the auditor's report in a form or in terms that are significantly different from the requirements of this standard. In these circumstances, the auditor shall evaluate:

- (a) Whether users may misunderstand the assurance obtained from the audit of the financial statements, and, if so,
- (b) Whether additional explanation in the auditor's report can mitigate possible misunderstanding.

4.3.3. If the auditor concludes that additional explanation in the auditor's report cannot mitigate possible misunderstanding, the auditor shall not accept the audit engagement, unless required by law or regulation to do so. An audit conducted in accordance with such law or regulation does not comply with the ISA (NZ) for LCE. Accordingly, the auditor shall not include any reference within the auditor's report to the audit having been conducted in accordance with this ISA (NZ) for LCE.

NZ4.3.4. Professional and Ethical Standard 1<sup>13</sup>, requires assurance practitioners to comply with Auditing Standards; therefore, auditors shall not sign an audit report that does not conform to the requirements of this ISA (NZ) for LCE. In the extremely rare situation described in paragraph 4.3.2., the auditor shall attach a separate report that conforms to the requirements of this ISA (NZ) for LCE.

#### **4.4. Terms of the Audit Engagement**

4.4.1. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ4.4.1. The auditor shall agree the terms of the audit engagement with those charged with governance.

<sup>12</sup> [NZ] PES 3, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*, paragraph 30 sets out the firm's responsibilities for establishing quality objectives for the acceptance of specific engagements, including judgements relating to financial and operating priorities of the firm when deciding to accept or continue specific engagements.

<sup>13</sup> Professional and Ethical Standard 1, *International Code of Ethics for Assurance Practitioners (including International Independence Standards)* (New Zealand)

*[NZ] If law or regulation prescribes the responsibilities of those charged with governance that are equivalent in effect to what this standard requires, the auditor may use the wording of the law or regulation to describe them in the written agreement.*

*Appendix 2 sets out an illustrative engagement letter.*

4.4.2. On recurring audits, the auditor shall assess whether circumstances require the terms of the audit engagement to be revised and whether there is a need to remind the entity of the existing terms of the audit engagement.

4.4.3. The auditor shall not agree to a change in the terms of the audit engagement where there is no reasonable justification for doing so.

4.4.4. If, prior to completing the audit engagement, the auditor is requested to change the audit engagement to an engagement that conveys a lower level of assurance, the auditor shall determine whether there is reasonable justification for doing so.

*Before agreeing to change an audit engagement to a review or a related service, the auditor may need to assess any legal or contractual implications of the change.*

4.4.5. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ4.4.5. If the terms of the audit engagement are changed, the auditor and those charged with governance shall agree on and record the new terms of the engagement in an engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement.

4.4.6. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ4.4.6. If the auditor is unable to agree to a change of the terms of the audit engagement and is not permitted by management or those charged with governance to continue the original audit engagement, the auditor shall:

- (a) Withdraw from the audit engagement, where possible under applicable law or regulation; and
- (b) Determine whether there is any obligation, either contractual or otherwise, to report the circumstances to other parties, such as those charged with governance, owners, or regulators.

## **4.5. Initial Audit Engagements**

4.5.1. If the engagement is an initial audit and there has been a change in auditor, the auditor shall communicate with the predecessor auditor, in compliance with relevant ethical requirements.

4.5.2. The auditor shall read the most recent financial statements, if any, and the auditor's report thereon, if any, for information relevant to opening balances, including disclosures.

4.5.3. If the prior period's financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor and there was a modification to the opinion, the auditor shall evaluate the effect of the matter giving rise to the modification in assessing the risks of material misstatement in the current period's financial statements.<sup>14</sup>

4.5.4. The auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence<sup>15</sup> about whether the opening balances contain misstatements that materially affect the current period's financial statements by:

<sup>14</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.9.

<sup>15</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.6.



- (a) Determining whether the prior period's closing balances have been correctly brought forward to the current period or, when appropriate, have been restated;
- (b) Determining whether the opening balances reflect the application of appropriate accounting policies; and
- (c) Performing one or more of the following:
  - (i) Where the prior year financial statements were audited, inspecting the predecessor auditor's working papers to obtain evidence regarding the opening balances;
  - (ii) Evaluating whether audit procedures performed in the current period provide evidence relevant to the opening balances; or
  - (iii) Performing specific audit procedures to obtain evidence regarding the opening balances.

*The nature and extent of audit procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances depend on such matters as:*

- *The accounting policies followed by the entity.*
- *The nature of the account balances, classes of transactions and disclosures and the risks of material misstatement in the current period's financial statements.*
- *The significance of the opening balances relative to the current period's financial statements.*
- *Whether the prior period's financial statements were audited and, if so, whether the predecessor auditor's opinion was modified.*

4.5.5. If the auditor obtains audit evidence that the opening balances contain misstatements that could materially affect the current period's financial statements, the auditor shall perform such additional audit procedures as are appropriate in the circumstances to determine the effect on the current period's financial statements.<sup>16</sup>

4.5.6 The auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the accounting policies reflected in the opening balances have been consistently applied in the current period's financial statements, and whether any changes in accounting policies have been appropriately accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.<sup>17</sup>

#### **4.6. Specific Communication Requirements**

4.6.1. The auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance:

- (a) The auditor's responsibilities for forming and expressing an opinion on the financial statements prepared by management; and
- (b) That the auditor's responsibilities do not relieve management or those charged with governance of their responsibilities for oversight of the preparation of the financial statements.

#### **4.7. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

<sup>16</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.7.

<sup>17</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.8.

4.7.1. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation matters identified, relevant discussions with personnel, and conclusions reached with respect to the acceptance and continuance of the client relationship and audit engagement.

4.7.2. The auditor shall document the basis for the determination made for using the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

4.7.3. The auditor shall document changes, if any, to the determination of the use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE if further information comes to the auditor's attention during the audit that may change the professional judgement made in this regard.

4.7.4 [Amended by the NZ AuASB]

NZ4.7.4. The auditor shall record in an audit engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement:

- (a) That the audit will be undertaken using the ISA (NZ) for LCE;
- (b) The objective and scope of the audit of the financial statements;
- (c) The respective responsibilities of the auditor and those charged with governance;
- (d) Identification of the applicable financial reporting framework for the preparation of the financial statements;
- (e) Reference to the expected form and content of any reports to be issued by the auditor; and
- (f) A statement that there may be circumstances in which a report may differ from its expected form and content.

4.7.5. [Amended by the NZ AuASB]

NZ4.7.5 If law or regulation prescribes in sufficient detail the terms of the audit engagement referred to in this standard, the auditor need not record them in a written agreement, except for the fact that such law or regulation applies, and that those charged with governance acknowledges and understands its responsibilities.

## **5. Planning**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 5 sets out the auditor's responsibility to plan the audit (including holding an engagement team discussion), and the concept of materiality when planning and performing the audit.

### *Scope of this Part*

Planning is not a discrete phase of the audit, but rather a continuous and iterative process that is updated and modified, as necessary, throughout the audit. Part 6, identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement, and Part 7, responding to assessed risks of material misstatement, are also relevant to this Part.

Some requirements within this Part are linked to procedures in other Parts and may require the auditor to perform those procedures in order to meet the requirements in this Part.

### **5.1. Objectives**

5.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are to:

- (a) Plan the audit so that it will be performed in an effective manner; and
- (b) Apply the concept of materiality appropriately in planning and performing the audit.

### **5.2. Planning Activities**

*The nature, timing and extent of planning activities will vary according to the nature and circumstances of the entity, the size and nature of the engagement team, the engagement team members' previous experience with the entity and any changes in circumstances that occur during the audit engagement.*

*The purpose and objective of planning the audit are the same whether the audit is an initial or recurring engagement. However, for an initial audit, the auditor may need to expand the planning activities because the auditor does not ordinarily have the previous experience with the entity that is considered when planning recurring engagements.*

5.2.1. The auditor shall set the scope, timing and direction of the audit and:

- (a) Identify the characteristics of the engagement that define its scope;
- (b) Ascertain the reporting objectives of the engagement to plan the timing of the audit and the nature of the communications required;
- (c) Consider the factors that, in the auditor's professional judgement, are significant in directing the engagement team's efforts;
- (d) Consider the results of preliminary engagement activities and, where applicable, whether knowledge gained on other engagements performed by the engagement partner for this entity is relevant; and
- (e) Ascertain the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be performed and the resources necessary to perform the audit, including determining whether experts are needed.

*Establishing the scope, timing and direction of the audit need not be a complex or time-consuming exercise. For example, a brief memorandum prepared after the previous audit, based on a review of the working papers and highlighting issues identified in the audit just completed, updated in the current period based on discussions with the owner-manager, can serve as the documented scope, timing and direction for the current audit engagement. Standard audit programmes or*

*checklists created based on the assumption of few identified controls, as is likely to be the case in a less complex entity, may be used provided that they are tailored to the circumstances of the engagement, including the auditor's risk assessments.*

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

5.2.2. The engagement partner and other key members of the engagement team shall be involved in planning the audit.

5.2.3. The auditor shall plan the nature, timing and extent of direction and supervision of engagement team members and review of their work.

5.2.4. The engagement partner shall consider information obtained in the acceptance and continuance process in planning and performing the audit.

5.2.5. When information used to plan and perform the audit has been obtained from the previous experience with the entity, or prior audits, the auditor shall evaluate whether such information remains relevant and reliable as audit evidence in the current period.

5.2.6. The auditor shall update and change the scope, timing and direction as necessary during the audit.

#### *Engagement Team Discussion*

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

5.2.7. The engagement partner and other key engagement team members shall discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement, including:

- (a) The application of the applicable financial reporting framework to the entity's facts and circumstances.
- (b) How and where the entity's financial statements may be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud, including how fraud may occur, and how fraud or error could arise from related party relationships or transactions.

Discussions among the engagement team shall occur setting aside beliefs the engagement team may have that management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance are honest and have integrity.

*The engagement team discussion may also include other matters related to the audit such as logistical, operational or other matters (such as when risks of material misstatement may have changed from prior years or matters related to relevant ethical requirements including independence) and the timing of the audit and communications that are required.*

5.2.8. When there are engagement team members not involved in the discussion, the engagement partner shall determine which matters are to be communicated to those members.

#### *Using the Work of Management's Expert*

5.2.9. If information to be used as audit evidence has been prepared using the work of management's expert, the auditor shall, having regard to the significance of that expert's work for the auditor's purpose:

- (a) Evaluate the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of that expert; and
- (b) Obtain an understanding of the work of that expert.

#### *Evaluating the Competence, Capabilities and Objectivity of a Management's Expert*

*Competence relates to the nature and level of expertise of the management's expert. Capability relates to the ability of the management's expert to exercise that competence in the circumstances. Objectivity relates to the possible effects that bias, conflict of interest or the influence of others may have on the professional or business judgement of the management's expert. Matters relevant to evaluating the competence, capabilities and objectivity of a management's expert may include whether that expert's work is subject to technical performance standards or other professional or industry requirements.*

#### *Obtaining an Understanding of the Work of the Management's Expert*

*When obtaining an understanding of the work of the management's expert, evaluating the agreement between the entity and that expert may assist the auditor in determining the appropriateness of the following for the auditor's purposes:*

- *The nature, scope and objectives of that expert's work;*
- *The respective roles and responsibilities of management and that expert; and*
- *The nature, timing and extent of communication between management and that expert, including the form of any report to be provided by that expert.*

#### *Determining Whether to Use the Work of an Auditor's Expert*

5.2.10. If expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall determine whether to use the work of an auditor's expert.

*If the preparation of the financial statements involves the use of expertise in a field other than accounting, the auditor, who is skilled in accounting and auditing, may not possess the necessary expertise to audit those financial statements. The auditor's determination of whether to use the work of an auditor's expert and, if so, when and to what extent, assists the auditor in meeting the requirements in paragraphs 3.2.7. and 5.2.1.(e). As the audit progresses, or as circumstances change, the auditor may need to revise earlier decisions about using the work of an auditor's expert.*

*The auditor has sole responsibility for the audit opinion expressed, and that responsibility is not reduced by the auditor's use of the work of an auditor's expert. Nonetheless, if the auditor using the work of an auditor's expert concludes, based on the audit procedures performed and the evidence obtained, that the work of that expert is adequate for the auditor's purposes, the auditor may accept that expert's findings or conclusions in the expert's field as appropriate audit evidence.*

5.2.11. The auditor shall consider the following when determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures related to the auditor's expert:

- (a) The nature of the matter to which that expert's work relates;
- (b) The risks of material misstatement in the matter to which that expert's work relates;
- (c) The significance of that expert's work in the context of the audit;
- (d) The auditor's knowledge of and experience with previous work performed by that expert; and

- (e) Whether that expert is subject to the auditor's firm's quality management policies or procedures.

5.2.12. If the auditor is using the work of an auditor's expert, the auditor shall:

- (a) Evaluate whether the auditor's expert has the necessary competence, capabilities and objectivity for the auditor's purposes. In the case of an auditor's external expert, the evaluation of objectivity shall include enquiry regarding interests and relationships that may create a threat to that expert's objectivity;
- (b) Obtain sufficient understanding of the field of expertise of the expert to enable the auditor to determine the nature, scope and objectives of the expert's work for the auditor's purpose, and evaluate the adequacy of that work for the auditor's purpose; and
- (c) Agree, in writing when appropriate, the nature, scope and objectives of the expert's work, the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and that expert, the nature, timing and extent of communications and the need for the expert to observe confidentiality requirements.

### 5.3. Materiality

5.3.1. The auditor shall determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole.

#### *Materiality in the Context of an Audit*

*The concept of materiality is applied by the auditor in both planning and performing the audit, and in evaluating the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and of uncorrected misstatements if any, on the financial statements and in forming an opinion in the auditor's report.*

*The auditor's determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgement, and is affected by the auditor's perception of the financial information needs of users of the financial statements.*

*The auditor's professional judgement about misstatements that will be considered material provides a basis for:*

- *Determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement;*
- *Identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement; and*
- *Determining the nature, timing and extent of further audit procedures.*

#### *Use of Benchmarks in Determining Materiality for the Financial Statements as a Whole*

*A percentage is often applied to a chosen benchmark as a starting point in determining materiality for the financial statements as a whole. Factors that may affect the identification of an appropriate benchmark include the following:*

- *The elements of the financial statements (for example, assets, liabilities, equity, revenue, expenses)*
- *Whether there are items on which the attention of the users tends to be focused;*
- *The nature of the entity, where the entity is in its life cycle, and the industry and economic environment in which the entity operates;*
- *The entity's ownership structure and the way it is financed. For example, if an entity is financed solely by debt rather than equity, users may put more emphasis on assets, and claims on them, than on the entity's earnings; and*

- *The relative volatility of the benchmark.*

*Examples of benchmarks that may be appropriate, depending on the circumstances of the entity, include categories of reported income such as profit before tax, total revenue, gross profit and total expenses, total equity or net asset value. Profit before tax from continuing operations is often used for profit-oriented entities. When profit before tax from continuing operations is volatile, other benchmarks may be more appropriate, such as gross profit or total revenues. For a not-for-profit organisation, a benchmark such as revenue, expenses, assets or equity may be more relevant.*

*When an entity's profit before tax from continuing operations is consistently nominal, as might be the case for an owner-managed business where the owner takes much of the profit before tax in the form of remuneration, a benchmark such as profit before remuneration and tax may be more relevant.*

*There is a relationship between the percentage and the chosen benchmark, such that a percentage applied to profit before tax from continuing operations will normally be higher than a percentage applied to total revenue.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*In the case of a public sector entity, legislators and regulators are often the primary users of its financial statements. Furthermore, the financial statements may be used to make decisions other than economic decisions. The determination of materiality for the financial statements as a whole in an audit of the financial statements of a public sector entity is therefore influenced by law, regulation or other authority, and by the financial information needs of legislators and the public in relation to public sector programmes.*

*In an audit of a public sector entity, total cost or net cost (expenses less revenues or expenditure less receipts) may be appropriate benchmarks for programme activities. Where a public sector entity has custody of public assets, assets may be an appropriate benchmark.*

- 5.3.2. The auditor shall also determine the materiality level or levels to be applied to particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures if, in the specific circumstances of the entity, there is one or more particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the financial statements.
- 5.3.3. The auditor shall determine performance materiality for the purposes of assessing the risks of material misstatement, and determining the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures.

*Planning the audit solely to detect individually material misstatements overlooks the fact that the aggregate of individually immaterial misstatements may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated, and leaves no margin for possible undetected misstatements. Performance materiality (which, as defined, is one or more amounts) is set to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements exceeds materiality.*

*The determination of performance materiality is not a simple mechanical calculation and involves the exercise of professional judgement. It is affected by the auditor's understanding of the entity, updated during the risk identification and assessment; and the nature and extent of misstatements identified in previous audits and thereby the auditor's expectations in relation to misstatements in the current period.*

#### *Clearly Trivial Misstatements*



*Part 7 requires the auditor to accumulate misstatements identified during the audit, other than those that are clearly trivial. During planning, the auditor may designate an amount below which misstatements of amounts in the individual statements would be clearly trivial, and would not need to be accumulated because the auditor expects that the accumulation of such amounts clearly would not have a material effect on the financial statements.*

5.3.4. If the auditor becomes aware of information during the audit that would have caused the auditor to have determined a different amount (or amounts) initially, the auditor shall revise materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures).

5.3.5. If the auditor concludes that a lower materiality for the financial statements as a whole (and, if applicable, materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures) than that initially determined is appropriate, the auditor shall determine whether it is necessary to revise performance materiality, and whether the nature, timing and extent of the further audit procedures remain appropriate.

#### **5.4. Specific Communication Requirements**

5.4.1. The auditor shall communicate with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance an overview of the planned scope, timing and direction of the audit.

#### **5.5. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

5.5.1. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation a description of the scope, timing and direction of the audit, including the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be performed, and significant changes made during the audit, together with the reasons for such changes.

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

5.5.2. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation the matters discussed among the engagement team and significant decisions reached, including the significant decisions regarding the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement due to fraud.

5.5.3. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation the:

- (a) Following amounts and the factors considered in their determination (including any revisions as applicable):
  - (i) Materiality for the financial statements as a whole;
  - (ii) If applicable, the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures; and
  - (iii) Performance materiality.
- (b) Amount below which misstatements would be considered clearly trivial.



## **6. Risk Identification and Assessment**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 6 contains the requirements relevant to the auditor's responsibility to perform procedures and related activities to:

- Obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, the applicable financial reporting framework, and the entity's system of internal control;
- Identify risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and assertion levels, whether due to fraud or error; and
- Assess inherent risk and control risk.

Appendix 3 illustrates the iterative nature of the auditor's risk identification and assessment.

### *Scope of this Part*

This Part deals with the auditor's responsibility to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement in the financial statements, which provides the basis for the audit procedures undertaken to respond to assessed risks in Part 7. Part 5 sets out the auditor's obligations for planning activities, including the requirements for the engagement team discussion.

### **6.1. Objectives**

- 6.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and assertion levels, thereby providing a basis for designing and implementing responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement (the assessed risks).

*Understanding the entity and its environment, the applicable financial reporting framework and the entity's system of internal control enables the auditor to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement. The auditor's risk identification and assessment process is iterative and dynamic.*

### **6.2. Procedures for Identifying and Assessing Risks and Related Activities**

- 6.2.1. The auditor shall design and perform procedures to obtain audit evidence that provides an appropriate basis for:

- (a) The identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and assertion levels; and
- (b) The design of further audit procedures.

*The auditor uses professional judgement to determine the nature and extent of the procedures to be performed, which may vary with the formality of the entity's policies or procedures.*

*Some less complex entities, and particularly owner-managed entities, may not have established structured processes and systems or may have established processes or systems with limited documentation or a lack of consistency in how they are undertaken. When such systems and processes lack formality, the procedures described in paragraph 6.2.3. are still required.*

*Designing and performing procedures to obtain audit evidence in a manner that is not biased towards obtaining audit evidence that may be corroborative or towards excluding audit evidence that may be contradictory may involve obtaining evidence from multiple sources within and*

*outside the entity. However, the auditor is not required to perform an exhaustive search to identify all possible sources of evidence.*

6.2.2. When obtaining audit evidence to identify and assess risks of material misstatement and design further audit procedures, the auditor shall consider information from:

- (a) The acceptance or continuance procedures; and
- (b) When applicable, other engagements performed by the engagement partner for the entity.

6.2.3. The procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement shall include:

- (a) Enquiries of management, and other appropriate individuals within the entity;
- (b) Analytical procedures; and
- (c) Observation and inspection.

*The auditor is not required to perform all of these procedures for each aspect of the auditor's understanding required by this Part.*

*Analytical procedures performed as a procedure to identify and assess risks of material misstatements help to identify inconsistencies, unusual transactions or events, and amounts, ratios, and trends that indicate matters that may have audit implications. Unusual or unexpected relationships that are identified may assist the auditor in identifying risks of material misstatement, especially risks of material misstatement due to fraud, including those relating to revenue accounts.*

*Analytical procedures performed as part of the risk identification and assessment may include both financial (e.g., sales price) and non-financial information (e.g., volume of goods sold) and the use of data aggregated at a high level. The auditor may perform a simple comparison of information, such as the change in account balances from balances in prior periods, to identify potential higher risk areas.*

*Observation and inspection may support, corroborate or contradict enquiries of management and others, and may also provide information about the entity and its environment. Where policies or procedures are not documented, or the entity's controls lack formality, the auditor may still be able to obtain some audit evidence to support the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement through observation or inspection of the performance of the control.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*When making enquiries of those who may have information that is likely to assist in identifying risks of material misstatement, auditors of public sector entities may obtain information from additional sources such as from the auditors that are involved in performance or other audits related to the entity. Procedures performed by auditors of public sector entities to identify and assess risks of material misstatement may also include observation and inspection of documents prepared by management for the legislature, for example documents related to mandatory performance reporting.*

#### *Automated Tools and Techniques*

*If the auditor uses ATT, the auditor may design and perform audit procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement on relatively large volumes of data (from the general ledger, sub-ledgers or other operational data) including for analysis, observation or inspection.*

6.2.4. In designing and performing procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement, the auditor shall consider possible risks of material misstatement arising from:

- (a) Fraud or error;
- (b) Related party relationships and transactions; and
- (c) Events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

#### *Fraud*

*Fraudulent financial reporting involves intentional misstatements, including omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial statements to deceive financial statement users. Fraudulent financial reporting often involves management override of controls that otherwise may appear to be operating effectively, such as recording fictitious journal entries close to the end of the financial reporting period.*

*Misappropriation of assets involves the theft of the entity's assets and is often perpetrated by employees in relatively small and immaterial amounts. However, it can also involve management who are usually more able to disguise or conceal misappropriations in ways that are difficult to detect.*

*Misappropriation of assets is often accompanied by false or misleading records or documents in order to conceal the fact that the assets are missing or have been pledged without proper authorisation.*

*In an LCE there may be different fraud risk factors than in more complex entities. On one hand, management or the owner-manager may be able to exercise more effective oversight than in a more complex entity which may compensate for more limited opportunities for segregation of duties. On the other hand, less segregation of duties and more direct involvement of management or the owner-manager may provide management or the owner-manager with a greater opportunity to override controls and commit fraud. LCEs, including owner-managers may also have different pressures or incentives to commit fraud than management in more complex entities. Appendix 4 sets out fraud risk factors relevant to less complex entities.*

#### *Related Parties*

*In some LCEs, related party transactions between owner-managers and close family members may be common, in particular in closely held entities. These transactions may not be conducted under normal market terms and conditions; for example, some related party transactions may be conducted with no exchange of consideration, or for consideration significantly different from fair value.*

#### *Going Concern*

*Events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern of particular relevance to an LCE include the risk that banks and other lenders, close family members or owner-managers may cease to support the entity, as well as the possible loss of a principal supplier, major customer, key employee, or the right to operate under a license, franchise or other legal agreement.*

- 6.2.5. If the audit opinion on the prior period's financial statements was modified, the auditor shall evaluate the effect on the current year's financial statements when identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement.

### **6.3. Understanding Relevant Aspects of the Entity**

*The auditor's understanding of relevant aspects of the entity, including the entity and its environment, the applicable financial reporting framework and the entity's system of internal*

*control establishes a frame of reference in which the auditor identifies and assesses the risks of material misstatement, and also informs how the auditor plans and performs further audit procedures.*

### *Enquiries of Management and Others Within the Entity*

6.3.1. The auditor shall enquire of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, regarding:

- (a) How the entity identifies business risks relevant to the preparation of the financial statements and how they are addressed;
- (b) The risks of fraud in the entity and the controls that management has established to mitigate these risks;
- (c) The nature and extent of management's direct involvement in operations or other activities that may help management to prevent or detect misstatements in accounting information or identify controls that are not operating as intended.
- (d) The identity of the entity's related parties, including:
  - (i) Changes from the prior period;
  - (ii) The nature of the relationships between the entity and these related parties; and
  - (iii) Whether the entity entered into any transactions with these related parties during the period and, if so, the type and purpose of the transactions; and
- (e) Whether the entity is in compliance with laws or regulations that may have an effect on the financial statements, and if there has been any correspondence with relevant licensing or regulatory authorities that may be relevant to the financial statements.
- (f) The basis for the intended use of the going concern basis of accounting, whether events or conditions exist that, individually or collectively, may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and, if so, management's plans to address them.

*Enquiries of management and, when applicable, those charged with governance, assist the auditor to identify and assess risks of material misstatement and respond to those risks.*

*Enquiries about how the entity identifies and assesses its business risks relevant to the preparation of the financial statements may assist the auditor in understanding:*

- *Where there are identified business risks;*
- *Whether, and how the entity has responded to those risks;*
- *Whether the risks faced by the entity have been identified, assessed and addressed as appropriate to the nature and circumstances of the entity.*

*Enquiries about the risks of material misstatement due to fraud in the entity may assist the auditor in understanding:*

- *Management's assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated due to fraud, including the nature, extent and frequency of such assessments;*
- *Management's process for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the entity, including any specific risks of fraud that management has identified or that have been brought to its attention, or classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures for which a risk of fraud is likely to exist;*

- *Management's communication, if any, to those charged with governance regarding its processes for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the entity.*

*Enquiring about how management performs activities to prevent or detect misstatements in accounting information and identifies controls that are not operating as intended may include enquiring about what information management uses and the basis upon which management considers the information to be sufficiently reliable, as well as enquiring about how deficiencies are remediated. These enquiries assist the auditor to understand whether the other aspects of the entity's system of internal control are present and functioning as appropriate to the entity's circumstances considering the nature and complexity of the entity.*

*Under the going concern basis of accounting, the financial statements are prepared on the assumption that the entity is a going concern and will continue its operations for the foreseeable future. General purpose financial statements are prepared using the going concern basis of accounting, unless management either intends to liquidate the entity or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so. When the use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate, assets and liabilities are recorded on the basis that the entity will be able to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business.*

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

6.3.2. The auditor shall share relevant information obtained about the entity's related parties with other members of the engagement team.

6.3.3. The auditor shall make enquiries of management, those charged with governance, and as appropriate others within the entity, to determine whether they have knowledge of any actual, suspected or alleged fraud affecting the entity.

#### *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*

6.3.4. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of:

- The entity's organisational structure, ownership and governance, and business model.
- The industry and other external factors affecting the entity.
- How the entity's financial performance is measured.
- The legal and regulatory framework applicable to the entity, and how the entity is complying with that framework.
- The entity's transactions and other events and conditions that may give rise to the need for, or changes in, accounting estimates to be recognised or disclosed.
- Agreements or relationships that may result in unrecognised liabilities or future commitments.

*Understanding the entity's business model helps the auditor to understand the entity's objectives and strategy, and to understand the business risks the entity takes and faces. Understanding the entity's business risks assists the auditor in identifying risks of material misstatement, since most business risks will eventually have financial consequences and, therefore, an effect on the financial statements. When obtaining an understanding of the entity's business model, the auditor may consider how the entity uses IT.*

*Relevant industry factors include industry conditions such as the competitive environment, supplier and customer relationships, and technological developments. Other external factors*

*affecting the entity that the auditor may consider include climate-related risks, the general economic conditions, interest rates and availability of financing, and inflation or currency revaluation.*

*When understanding agreements or relationships that may result in unrecognised liabilities or future commitments the auditor may consider inspecting minutes of meetings and correspondence with legal counsel and inspecting legal expense accounts.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*Entities operating in the public sector may create and deliver value in different ways to those creating wealth for owners but will still have a 'business model' with a specific objective. Matters public sector auditors may obtain an understanding of that are relevant to the business model of the entity, include:*

- *Knowledge of relevant government activities, including related programmes.*
- *Programme objectives and strategies, including public policy elements.*

#### *Understanding the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework*

6.3.5. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of:

- (a) The applicable financial reporting framework including, for accounting estimates, the recognition criteria, measurement bases, and the related presentation and disclosure requirements, and how these apply in the context of the nature and circumstances of the entity and its environment.
- (b) The entity's accounting policies and reasons for any changes thereto.

6.3.6. The auditor shall evaluate whether the entity's accounting policies are appropriate and consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework.

#### *Understanding the Entity's System of Internal Control*

*In LCEs, and in particular owner-managed entities, the way in which the entity's system of internal control is designed, implemented and maintained will vary with the entity's size and complexity. When there are no formalised processes or documented policies or procedures, the auditor is still required to obtain an understanding of how management, or where appropriate, those charged with governance prevent and detect fraud and error, and use professional judgement to determine the nature and extent of the procedures to obtain the required understanding.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*Auditors of public sector entities often have additional responsibilities with respect to internal control, for example, to report on compliance with an established code of practice or reporting on spending against budget. Auditors of public sector entities may also have responsibilities to report on compliance with law, regulation or other authority. As a result, their considerations about the system of internal control may be broader and more detailed.*

#### *Understanding the Entity's Control Environment*

6.3.7. The auditor shall:

- (a) Obtain an understanding of the control environment relevant to the preparation of the financial statements; and



- (b) Evaluate whether the control environment provides an appropriate foundation for the entity's system of internal control considering the nature and complexity of the entity.

*The auditor's understanding may include:*

- *How management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, oversee the entity, demonstrate integrity and ethical values, for example, through communication to employees regarding expectations for business practices and ethical behaviour;*
- *The culture of the entity, including whether management supports honesty and ethical behaviour;*
- *The entity's assignment of authority and responsibility;*
- *How the entity attracts, develops, and retains competent individuals; and*
- *When applicable, how owner-managers are actively involved in the business and how this may impact the risks arising from management override of controls due to lack of segregation of duties.*

*The control environment provides an overall foundation for the operation of the other aspects of the entity's system of internal control, and deficiencies may undermine the rest of the entity's system of internal control. Although it does not directly prevent or detect and correct misstatements, it may influence the effectiveness of other controls in the system of internal control. The control environment includes the governance and management functions and the attitudes, awareness and actions of those charged with governance and management concerning the entity's system of internal control and its importance in the entity.*

*Because the control environment is foundational to the entity's system of internal control, any deficiencies could have pervasive effects on the preparation of the financial statements. Therefore, the auditor's understanding and evaluation of the control environment affects the auditor's identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level, and may also affect the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the assertion level, as well as the auditor's responses to the assessed risks.*

*Some or all aspects of the control environment may not be applicable for an LCE or may be less formalised. For example, an LCE may not have a written code of conduct but, instead, may have developed a culture that emphasises the importance of integrity and ethical behaviour through oral communication and by management example.*

*Some entities may be dominated by a single individual who may exercise a great deal of discretion. The actions and attitudes of that individual may have a pervasive effect on the culture of the entity, which in turn may have a pervasive effect on the control environment. Domination of management by a single individual in an LCE does not generally, in and of itself, indicate a failure by management to display and communicate an appropriate attitude regarding internal control and the financial reporting process. In some entities, the need for management authorisation can compensate for otherwise deficient controls and reduce the risk of employee fraud. However, domination of management by a single individual can be a potential control deficiency since there is an opportunity for management override of controls.*

#### Understanding the Entity's Process to Prepare its Financial Statements

6.3.8. For significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of the entity's process to prepare its financial statements including:

- (a) The accounting records and other records that support the classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures in the financial statements;

- (b) How transactions are initiated, and how information about them is recorded, processed, corrected as necessary, transferred to the general ledger and reported in the financial statements;
- (c) How information about events and conditions, other than transactions are identified, processed and disclosed; and
- (d) The entity's resources, including the IT environment, relevant to (a) to (c) above.

*Matters the auditor may consider when obtaining an understanding of the entity's process to prepare its financial statements relating to significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures include how:*

- *The data or information relating to transactions, other events and conditions is processed;*
- *The integrity of that data or information is maintained; and*
- *The information processes, personnel and other resources are used.*

*The auditor's understanding may be obtained in various ways and may include:*

- *Enquiries of relevant personnel about the procedures used to initiate, record, process and report transactions or about the entity's financial reporting process;*
- *Inspection of policy or process manuals or other documentation of the entity's process to prepare the financial statements;*
- *Observation of the performance of the policies or procedures by entity's personnel; or*
- *Selecting transactions and tracing them through the applicable process to prepare the financial statements (i.e., performing a walk-through).*

*LCEs with direct management involvement may not need extensive descriptions of accounting procedures, sophisticated accounting records, or written policies.*

#### *Automated Tools and Techniques*

*The auditor may also use ATT to obtain direct access to, or a digital download from, the databases in the entity's information system that store accounting records of transactions. By applying ATT to this information, the auditor may confirm the understanding obtained about how transactions flow through the information system by tracing journal entries, or other digital records related to a particular transaction, or an entire population of transactions, from initiation in the accounting records through to recording in the general ledger. Analysis of complete or large sets of transactions may also result in the identification of variations from the normal, or expected processing procedures for these transactions, which may result in the identification of risks of material misstatement.*

6.3.9. For accounting estimates and related disclosures for significant classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of how management:

- (a) Identifies, selects and applies relevant methods, assumptions and data that are appropriate in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework, including identification of significant assumptions;
- (b) Understands the degree of estimation uncertainty and addresses such uncertainty, including selecting a point estimate and related disclosures for inclusion in the financial statements; and
- (c) Reviews the outcome(s) of previous accounting estimates and responds to the results of that review.



6.3.10. The auditor shall evaluate whether the entity's process to prepare its financial statements, including for accounting estimates, appropriately supports the preparation of its financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

#### Understanding the Services Provided by a Service Organisation

6.3.11. If the entity uses the services of a service organisation and those services are relevant to the entity's process to prepare its financial statements, the auditor's understanding in accordance with paragraph 6.3.8. shall include:

- (a) The nature of the services provided by the service organisation and the significance of those services to the entity including the effect thereof on the user entity's system of internal control;
- (b) The nature and materiality of the transactions processed or accounts or financial reporting processes affected by the service organisation;
- (c) The degree of interaction between the activities of the service organisation and those of the user entity; and
- (d) The relevant contractual terms for the activities undertaken by the service organisation.

The auditor's understanding shall be sufficient to provide an appropriate basis for the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement.

*LCEs may often use external bookkeeping services ranging from the processing of certain transactions (for example, processing of payroll and payment of payroll taxes) and maintenance of their accounting records to the preparation of their financial statements. The use of such a service organisation for the preparation of its financial statements does not relieve management of the less complex entity and, where appropriate, those charged with governance of their responsibilities for the financial statements.*

*The services of a service organisation are relevant to the entity's process to prepare its financial statements when those services, and the controls over them, are part of, or affect the process described in paragraph 6.3.8.*

*The auditor's understanding helps to inform the auditor about the nature and significance of the services provided by the service organisation and their effect on the user entity's system of internal control, which affect the nature and extent of work to be performed by the auditor regarding the services provided by a service organisation. The significance of the controls of the service organisation relative to those of the entity depends on the degree of interaction between the service organisation's activities and those of the entity. For example, the service organisation may process and account for transactions that are still required to be authorised by the entity, alternatively the entity may rely on such controls being affected at the service organisation.*

*The service organisation may have engaged a service auditor to provide a report on the description and design (a type 1 report), or on the description, design and operating effectiveness (a type 2 report), of controls at the service organisation. Such reports may provide information for the auditor in obtaining an understanding of the user entity's system of internal control. However, this standard has not been designed for, and therefore does not include requirements to address, the auditor's use of such reports as audit evidence about the design, implementation or operating effectiveness of controls at the service organisation.*

#### Understanding the Entity's Control Activities

6.3.12. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of the entity's control activities by identifying controls that address risks of material misstatement at the assertion level as set out below. For each

control identified in (a)—(e) below, the auditor shall perform procedures, beyond enquiry, to evaluate whether the control is designed effectively and has been implemented:

- (a) Controls that address risks determined to be significant risks;
- (b) Controls over journal entries, including journal entries to record non-recurring, unusual transactions or adjustments;
- (c) Controls, if any, for which the auditor plans to test the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing and extent of substantive testing, including those controls that address risks for which substantive procedures alone are not enough to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence; and
- (d) Controls, if any, related to significant transactions and arrangements with related parties, and significant transactions and arrangements outside the normal course of business.
- (e) Controls, if any, in (a) to (d) at the user entity related to the services provided by the service organisation, including those that are applied to the transactions processed by the service organisation.

*The auditor's required understanding of the entity's control activities involves identifying specific controls, as appropriate in the entity's circumstances, and evaluating their design and determining whether the controls have been implemented. Evaluating the design and implementation of controls includes the evaluation of whether the control is designed effectively to address the risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, or effectively designed to support the operation of other controls, and the determination whether the control has been implemented.*

*This assists the auditor's understanding of management's approach to addressing certain risks, and therefore provides a basis for the design and performance of further audit procedures responsive to these risks even when the auditor does not plan to test the operating effectiveness of identified controls.*

#### *Journal Entries*

*Controls over journal entries are expected to be identified for all audits because the manner in which an entity incorporates information from transaction processing into the general ledger ordinarily involves the use of journal entries, whether standard or non-standard, or automated or manual. The extent to which other controls are identified may vary based on the nature of the entity and the auditor's planned approach to further audit procedures. For example, the entity's information system may not be complex and the auditor may not intend to test the operating effectiveness of controls. Further, the auditor may not have identified any significant risks or any other risks of material misstatement for which it is necessary for the auditor to evaluate the design of controls and determine that they have been implemented. In such an audit, the auditor may determine that there are no identified controls other than the entity's controls over journal entries.*

#### *Related Parties*

*Controls in LCEs are likely to be less formal and such entities may have no documented processes for dealing with related party relationships and transactions. An owner-manager may mitigate some of the risks arising from related party transactions, or potentially increase those risks, through active involvement in all the main aspects of the transactions. For such entities, the auditor may obtain an understanding of the related party relationships and transactions, and any controls that may exist over these, through enquiry of management combined with other procedures, such as observation of management's oversight and review activities, and inspection of available relevant documentation.*

6.3.13. For the controls identified in paragraph 6.3.12. the auditor shall:

- (a) Identify the IT applications and other aspects of the IT environment that are subject to risks arising from the use of IT and what those related risks are;
- (b) Identify the entity's general IT controls that respond to those identified risks; and
- (c) By performing procedures in addition to enquiries, evaluate whether the identified general IT controls are designed effectively and have been implemented.

*The auditor's understanding of the entity's process to prepare the financial statements (which may be done by performing walk-through procedures) includes the IT environment relevant to the flows of transactions and processing of information. This is because the entity's use of IT applications or other aspects of the IT environment may give rise to risks arising from the use of IT (i.e., the susceptibility of information processing controls to ineffective design or operation, or risks to the integrity of information).*

*The extent of the auditor's understanding of the IT processes, including the extent to which the entity has general IT controls in place, will vary with the nature and the circumstances of the entity and its IT environment, as well as based on the nature and extent of controls identified by the auditor. The number of IT applications that are subject to risks arising from the use of IT also will vary based on these factors. General IT controls support the continued proper operation of the IT environment, including the continued effective functioning of information processing controls and the integrity of information.*

#### *Deficiencies Within the Entity's System of Internal Control*

6.3.14. The auditor shall determine whether one or more deficiencies have been identified in the entity's system of internal control and, if so, whether, individually or in combination, they constitute significant deficiencies.

*In understanding the entity's system of internal control, the auditor may determine that certain of the entity's policies or procedures are not appropriate to the nature and circumstances of the entity. Such a determination may be an indicator that assists the auditor in identifying deficiencies in internal control. If the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies, the auditor may consider the effect of those deficiencies on the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement and on the design of further audit procedures.*

*The auditor uses professional judgement in determining whether a deficiency represents a significant deficiency in internal control.*

#### **6.4. Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement**

*Risks of material misstatement are identified and assessed by the auditor to determine the nature, timing and extent of further audit procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. This evidence enables the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements at an acceptably low level of audit risk.*

6.4.1. The auditor shall identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, due to fraud or error, at:

- (a) The financial statement level. In doing so, the auditor shall determine whether they affect risks at the assertion level and consider the nature and extent of the pervasive effect of identified risks on the financial statements; and
- (b) The assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. In doing so, the auditor shall:

- (i) Determine the relevant assertions and related significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures; and
- (ii) Assess inherent risk for identified risks of material misstatement at the assertion level by assessing the likelihood and magnitude of misstatement.

#### *Financial Statement Level Risks*

*Risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level refer to risks that relate pervasively to the financial statements as a whole, and potentially affect many assertions. Risks of this nature are not necessarily risks related to specific assertions at the class of transactions, account balance or disclosure level (e.g., risk of management override of controls).*

#### *Assertion Level Risks*

*In identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement, the auditor uses assertions to consider the different types of potential misstatements that may occur. Appendix 5 sets out assertions that may be used by the auditor in considering different types of misstatements at the assertion level.*

*An assertion about a class of transactions, account balance or disclosure is a relevant assertion when it has an identified risk of material misstatement. The determination of whether an assertion is a relevant assertion is made before consideration of any related controls (i.e., the inherent risk) and is based on the auditor's consideration of misstatements that have a reasonable possibility of both occurring (i.e., likelihood), and being material if they were to occur (i.e., magnitude). Significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures are those for which there is one or more relevant assertions. Determining relevant assertions and the significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures provides a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement.*

#### *Assessing Inherent Risk*

*The assessed inherent risk for a particular risk of material misstatement at the assertion level represents a judgement within a range, from lower to higher, on the spectrum of inherent risk.*

*In assessing inherent risk, the auditor uses professional judgement in determining the significance of the combination of the likelihood and magnitude of a misstatement on the spectrum of inherent risk. The judgement about where in the range inherent risk is assessed may vary based on the nature, size or circumstances of the entity, and takes into account the assessed likelihood and magnitude of the misstatement.*

*In considering the likelihood of a misstatement, the auditor considers the possibility that a misstatement may occur. In considering the magnitude of a misstatement, the auditor considers the qualitative and quantitative aspects of the possible misstatement (i.e., misstatements in assertions about classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures may be judged to be material due to nature, size or circumstances).*

*When assessing inherent risk, factors relating to the preparation of information required by the applicable financial reporting framework that affect the susceptibility of assertions to misstatement may include:*

- *Complexity;*
- *Subjectivity;*
- *Change;*
- *Uncertainty (for accounting estimates this is estimation uncertainty); or*

- *Susceptibility to misstatement due to management bias or other fraud risk factors insofar as they affect inherent risk.*

*The presence of these factors may give rise to higher inherent risk and may be an indication that the ISA (NZ) for LCE is not appropriate for the audit.*

*When risks of material misstatement relate more pervasively to the financial statements as a whole, and potentially affect many assertions, the risks of material misstatement are assessed at the financial statement level. When assessing risk at the assertion level, the auditor considers the degree to which the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level affects the assessment of inherent risks for risks of material misstatement at the assertion level.*

*In identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement, the results of the engagement team discussion and any enquiries relating to fraud and going concern are relevant.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*In exercising professional judgement as to the assessment of the risk of material misstatement, public sector auditors may consider the complexity of the regulations and directives, and the risks of non-compliance with authorities.*

- 6.4.2. In identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the auditor shall, based on a presumption that there are risks of fraud in revenue recognition, evaluate which types of revenue, revenue transactions, or assertions give rise to such risks.

*When identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement due to fraud, the auditor may consider whether unusual or unexpected relationships have been identified in performing analytical procedures, including those related to revenue accounts.*

*The presumption that there are risks of fraud in revenue recognition may be rebutted. For example, the auditor may conclude, based on the audit evidence obtained, that there is no risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to revenue recognition in the case where there is a single type of simple revenue transaction, for example, leasehold revenue from a single rental property.*

- 6.4.3. In identifying and assessing risks of material misstatement relating to an accounting estimate and related disclosure at the assertion level, the auditor shall consider the degree to which the accounting estimate is subject to estimation uncertainty, and the degree to which the following are affected by complexity, subjectivity, change or management bias:

- (a) The selection and application of the method, the assumptions and data used; and
- (b) The selection of management's point estimate and related disclosures.

#### *Significant Risks*

- 6.4.4. The auditor shall determine whether any of the assessed risks of material misstatement are, in the auditor's professional judgement, a significant risk.

*The determination of which of the assessed risks of material misstatement are close to the upper end of the spectrum of inherent risk, and are therefore significant risks, is a matter of professional judgement, unless the risk is of a type specified to be treated as a significant risk as set out in paragraph 6.4.6. Being close to the upper end of the spectrum of inherent risk will differ from entity to entity, and will not necessarily be the same for an entity period on period. It may depend on the nature and circumstances of the entity for which the risk is being assessed.*



6.4.5. The auditor shall determine whether the assessed risks associated with related party relationships and transactions, and assessed risks relating to accounting estimates are significant risks.

6.4.6. The auditor shall treat the following as significant risks:

- (a) Risk of material misstatement from management override of controls;
- (b) Any other risks of material misstatement due to fraud, including risks that the auditor identified in accordance with paragraph 6.4.2.; or
- (c) Identified significant related party transactions outside the entity's normal course of business.

*Although the level of risk of management override of controls will vary from entity to entity, the risk is nevertheless present in all entities. Due to the unpredictable way in which such override could occur, it is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud and therefore a significant risk.*

#### Assessing Control Risk

6.4.7. The auditor shall assess control risk if:

- (a) The auditor has determined that substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence for any of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level; or
- (b) The auditor otherwise plans to test the operating effectiveness of controls.

Otherwise, the assessed risk of material misstatement is the same as the assessment of inherent risk.

*The auditor's plans to test the operating effectiveness of controls is based on the expectation that controls are operating effectively, and this will form the basis of the auditor's assessment of control risk.*

*The initial expectation of the operating effectiveness of controls is based on the auditor's evaluation of the design, and the determination of implementation, of the controls identified in paragraphs 6.3.12. and 6.3.13.(b). Once the auditor has tested the operating effectiveness of the controls in accordance with Part 7, the auditor will be able to confirm the initial expectation about the operating effectiveness of controls. If the controls are not operating effectively as expected, then the auditor will need to revise the control risk assessment.*

*The auditor's assessment of control risk may be performed in different ways depending on preferred audit techniques or methodologies, and may be expressed in different ways. The control risk assessment may be expressed using qualitative categories (for example, control risk assessed as maximum, moderate, minimum) or in terms of the auditor's expectation of how effective the control(s) is in addressing the identified risk, that is, the planned reliance on the effective operation of controls. For example, if control risk is assessed as maximum, the auditor contemplates no reliance on the effective operation of controls. If control risk is assessed at less than maximum, the auditor contemplates reliance on the effective operation of controls.*

*Where routine business transactions are subject to highly automated processing with little or no manual intervention, it may not be possible to perform only substantive procedures in relation to the risk. This may be the case in circumstances where a significant amount of an entity's information is initiated, recorded, processed, or reported only in electronic form. In such cases:*

- *The sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence usually depend on the effectiveness of controls over its accuracy and completeness.*

- *The potential for improper initiation or alteration of information to occur and not be detected may be greater if appropriate controls are not operating effectively.*

### *Evaluation of the Procedures to Identify and Assess Risks of Material Misstatement and Revision of Risk Assessment*

6.4.8. The auditor shall evaluate whether the audit evidence obtained from procedures to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement provides an appropriate basis for the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement. If not, the auditor shall perform additional procedures until audit evidence has been obtained to provide such a basis. In identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement, the auditor shall consider all audit evidence obtained from the procedures to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether corroborative or contradictory to assertions made by management.

6.4.9. The auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level may change during the course of the audit as additional audit evidence is obtained. In circumstances where the auditor obtains audit evidence from performing further audit procedures, or if new information is obtained, either of which is inconsistent with the audit evidence on which the auditor originally based the assessment, the auditor shall revise the assessment and modify the further planned audit procedures accordingly.

6.4.10. The auditor shall remain alert throughout the audit for audit evidence of events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

*If events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern are identified after the auditor's risk assessments are made, the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement may need to be revised.*

## **6.5. Evaluation of the Appropriateness of Using the ISA (NZ) for LCE**

6.5.1. Based on the procedures performed to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, the engagement partner shall evaluate whether the ISA (NZ) for LCE continues to be appropriate for the nature and circumstances of the entity being audited.

*The auditor's original determination to use the ISA (NZ) for LCE may change as new information or additional audit evidence is obtained when performing procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement. In circumstances where audit evidence, or new information, is obtained, which is inconsistent with the auditor's original determination for using the ISA (NZ) for LCE, the auditor may need to change the original determination to use the ISA (NZ) for LCE, and transition to using the ISAs or other applicable standards as appropriate.*

## **6.6. Specific Communication Requirements**

6.6.1. The auditor shall communicate with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, the significant risks identified by the auditor.

## **6.7. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

*The form and extent of documentation for the identification and assessment of the risks of material misstatement may be simple and relatively brief, and is influenced by:*

- *The nature, size and complexity of the entity and its system of internal control.*
- *Availability of information from the entity.*

- *The audit methodology and technology used in the course of the audit.*

*It is not necessary to document the entirety of the auditor's understanding of the entity and matters related to it, but rather apply the principles in Part 2.4. and the matters noted below.*

6.7.1. The auditor shall include the following in the audit documentation:

- (a) Key elements of the understanding obtained regarding each of the aspects of the entity and its environment, the applicable financial reporting framework, the entity's system of internal control, and the procedures performed to identify and assess risks of material misstatement;
- (b) The names of the identified related parties (including changes from prior period) and the nature of the related party relationships;
- (c) The identified and assessed risks of material misstatement, including risks due to fraud, at the financial statement level and at the assertion level, including significant risks and risks for which substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence, and the rationale for the significant judgements made;
- (d) If applicable, the reasons for the conclusion that there is not a risk of material misstatement due to fraud related to revenue recognition;
- (e) The controls set out in paragraphs 6.3.12. and 6.3.13. and the evaluation whether the control is designed effectively and determination whether the control has been implemented; and
- (f) For accounting estimates, key elements of the auditor's understanding of the accounting estimates, including controls as appropriate, the linkage of the assessed risks of material misstatements to the auditor's further procedures, and any indicators of management bias and how those were addressed.

6.7.2. The auditor shall document the basis for the evaluation about whether the ISA (NZ) for LCE continues to be appropriate for the nature and circumstances of the entity being audited.



## **7. Responding to Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 7 contains content related to the:

- Design and implementation of overall responses to assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level;
- Design and implementation of responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement at the assertion level (i.e., design and performance of further audit procedures). Further procedures include substantive procedures (tests of detail and substantive analytical procedures) and tests of controls (as appropriate), and are expanded on in this Part; and
- Procedures for specific topics when responding to assessed risks of material misstatement.

### *Scope of this Part*

This Part sets out the specific requirements for obtaining audit evidence through responding to assessed risks of material misstatement. Part 2 also sets out the broad requirements for audit evidence. In complying with the requirements in this Part, the auditor may find it useful to refer to the following that set out relevant matters:

- Fraud – see Part 1.5.
- Laws and regulations – see Part 1.6.
- Related parties – see Part 1.7.
- Information to be used as audit evidence – see Part 2.3.

### **7.1. Objectives**

7.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are to:

- (a) Obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the assessed risks of material misstatement, through designing and implementing responses to those risks;
- (b) Respond appropriately to risks of material misstatement arising from fraud or suspected fraud;
- (c) Obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding management's use of the going concern assumption and related disclosures; and
- (d) Respond appropriately to identified or suspected non-compliance with law or regulation that have been identified during the audit.

### **7.2. Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Financial Statement Level**

7.2.1. The auditor shall design and implement overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level, whether due to fraud or error.

*The auditor's overall responses at the financial statement level, for example, making general changes to the nature, timing or extent of audit procedures, or adjustments to resources assigned or using experts, are based on those risks that relate pervasively to the financial statements as a whole. These may include, for example, risks arising from industry, regulatory and other external factors, or matters related broadly to the entity's basis of accounting or accounting policies.*

*In particular, the auditor's overall responses also are influenced by the auditor's understanding of the control environment. The control environment provides an overall foundation for the operation of the other aspects of the entity's system of internal control. Although the control environment does not directly prevent, or detect and correct misstatements, it may influence the effectiveness of other controls in the system of internal control. Therefore, an effective control environment may allow the auditor to have more confidence in internal control and the reliability of audit evidence generated internally within the entity.*

*Deficiencies that have been identified in the control environment when obtaining an understanding of the entity's system of internal control, however, have the opposite effect and may result in the need for more extensive audit evidence from substantive procedures. A weak control environment also impacts the work that may be undertaken at an interim period.*

7.2.2. In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level, the auditor shall:

- (a) Evaluate whether the selection and application of accounting policies by the entity, particularly those related to subjective measurements, may be indicative of fraudulent financial reporting resulting from management's effort to manage earnings; and
- (b) Incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection of the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures.

*Incorporating an element of unpredictability may be achieved by, for example:*

- *Performing substantive procedures on selected account balances and assertions not otherwise tested due to their materiality or risk.*
- *Adjusting the timing of audit procedures from that otherwise expected.*
- *Using different sampling methods.*
- *Performing audit procedures at different locations or at locations on an unannounced basis.*

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

7.2.3. In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the financial statement level, the auditor shall assign and supervise personnel taking account of the knowledge, skill, and ability of the individuals to be given significant engagement responsibilities and the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud for the engagement.

### 7.3. Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement at the Assertion Level

7.3.1. The auditor shall design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing and extent are based on, and responsive to, assessed risks, whether due to fraud or error, at the assertion level.

*Further audit procedures comprise tests of controls and substantive procedures. The auditor may choose to perform tests of controls or they may be required in specific circumstances (see paragraph 7.3.2.(d)). Substantive procedures include tests of details and substantive analytical procedures.*

*Further audit procedures are responsive to the assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, and provide a clear linkage between the auditor's further procedures and the risk*

*assessment. If the assessed risks of material misstatement are due to fraud risks at the assertion level, the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures may need to be changed to obtain audit evidence that is more relevant and reliable or to obtain additional corroborative information.*

*The auditor need not design and perform further audit procedures where the assessment of the risk of material misstatement is below the acceptably low level. However, as required by paragraph 7.3.14. irrespective of the assessed risk, the auditor shall perform substantive procedures for each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure.*

7.3.2. In designing the further audit procedures, the auditor shall:

- (a) Consider the reasons for the assessment given to the risk of material misstatement at the assertion level for each significant class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure, including:
  - (i) The likelihood and magnitude of misstatement due to the characteristics of the significant class of transactions, account balance, or disclosure (that is, the inherent risk); and
  - (ii) Whether the risk assessment takes account of controls that address the risk of material misstatements (that is, the control risk), thereby requiring the auditor to obtain audit evidence to determine whether the controls are operating effectively (where the auditor plans to test the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing and extent of substantive procedures);
- (b) Obtain more persuasive audit evidence the higher the auditor's assessment of risk;
- (c) In designing and performing tests of controls, obtain more persuasive audit evidence the greater the reliance the auditor places on the operating effectiveness of controls; and
- (d) If the auditor intends to test the operating effectiveness of controls or when substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the assertion level, design and perform tests of controls, to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence as to the operating effectiveness of such controls.

*In some audits, the auditor may not be able to identify many controls, or the extent of documentation prepared by the entity to which they exist or operate may be limited. In such cases, it may be more efficient for the auditor to perform further audit procedures that are primarily substantive procedures.*

*When obtaining more persuasive audit evidence because of a higher assessment of risk, the auditor may increase the quantity of the evidence, or obtain evidence that is more relevant or reliable, for example, by placing more emphasis on obtaining third party evidence or by obtaining corroborating evidence from a number of independent sources.*

#### *Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities*

*For the audits of public sector entities, the audit mandate and any other special auditing requirements may affect the auditor's consideration of the nature, timing and extent of further audit procedures.*

7.3.3. When designing tests of controls and tests of details, the auditor shall determine the means of selecting items for testing that are effective in meeting the purpose of the audit procedure.

*In selecting items for testing, the auditor is required by paragraph 2.3.1. to determine the relevance and reliability of information to be used as audit evidence; the other aspect of effectiveness (sufficiency) is an important consideration in selecting items to test. The means*

*available to the auditor for selecting items for testing are selecting all items (100% examination), selecting specific items and audit sampling.*

### *Tests of Controls*

- 7.3.4. In designing and performing tests of controls, the auditor shall perform audit procedures in combination with enquiry to obtain audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls, including:
- (a) How the controls were applied at relevant times during the period;
  - (b) The consistency with which they were applied; and
  - (c) By whom or by what means they were applied.
- 7.3.5. The auditor shall determine whether the controls to be tested depend on other controls (indirect controls), and, if so, consider whether it is necessary to obtain evidence about the effective operation of the indirect controls.
- 7.3.6. The auditor shall test controls for the period of time, or throughout the period, for which the auditor intends to rely on those controls in order to provide an appropriate basis for the auditor's reliance.
- 7.3.7. If the auditor obtains audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls in the interim period, the auditor shall obtain additional audit evidence about any subsequent significant changes and determine the additional audit evidence to be obtained for the remaining period.
- 7.3.8. If the auditor intends to use audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls obtained in previous periods, the auditor shall:
- (a) Consider:
    - (i) The effectiveness of the system of internal control;
    - (ii) The risks from the characteristics of the control (e.g., manual or automated);
    - (iii) The effectiveness of general IT controls;
    - (iv) The effectiveness of the control and its application by the entity;
    - (v) Whether the lack of a change in a particular control poses a risk due to changing circumstances; and
    - (vi) The risk of material misstatement and the extent of reliance on the control planned; and
  - (b) Establish the continuing relevance of that evidence by obtaining audit evidence about whether significant changes in those controls have occurred subsequent to the previous audit. If there have been significant changes the auditor shall test the control in the current period, otherwise at least once every third audit.
- 7.3.9. If the auditor intends to rely on a control that is a control over a significant risk, the auditor shall test the control in the current period.
- 7.3.10. When evaluating the operating effectiveness of controls upon which the auditor intends to rely, the auditor shall evaluate whether misstatements that have been detected by substantive procedures indicate that controls are not operating effectively. The absence of misstatements detected by substantive procedures, however, does not provide audit evidence that controls related to the assertion being tested are effective.

7.3.11. If deviations from controls upon which the auditor intends to rely are detected, the auditor shall make specific enquiries to understand these matters and their potential consequences, and shall determine whether:

- (a) The tests of controls provide an appropriate basis for reliance on the controls;
- (b) Additional tests of control are necessary; or
- (c) The risks of material misstatement need to be addressed using substantive procedures.

#### *Substantive Procedures*

7.3.12. The auditor's substantive procedures shall include substantive procedures specifically responsive to significant risks. When the response to a significant risk consists only of substantive procedures, those procedures shall include tests of details.

7.3.13. The auditor's substantive procedures shall include audit procedures related to the financial statement closing process, including:

- (a) Agreeing or reconciling information in the financial statements with the underlying accounting records, including agreeing or reconciling information in disclosures, whether such information is obtained from within or outside of the general and subsidiary ledgers; and
- (b) Examining material journal entries and other adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements.

7.3.14. Irrespective of the assessed risks, substantive procedures shall be performed for each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure.

*Paragraph 7.3.1. requires the auditor to design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing and extent are based on, and responsive to assessed risks of material misstatement at the assertion level. Because of this, substantive procedures may have already been performed for significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures.*

*Not all assertions within a material class of transactions, account balance or disclosure are required to be tested. Rather, in designing the substantive procedures to be performed, the auditor's consideration of the assertion(s) in which, if a misstatement were to occur, there is a reasonable possibility of the misstatement being material, may assist in identifying the appropriate nature, timing and extent of the procedures to be performed.*

7.3.15. If the auditor performed substantive procedures at an interim date, the auditor shall cover the remaining period by performing:

- (a) Substantive procedures, combined with tests of controls for the intervening period; or
- (b) If the auditor determines that it is sufficient, further substantive procedures only, that provide a reasonable basis for extending the audit conclusions from the interim date to the period end.

#### *Substantive Analytical Procedures*

7.3.16. If the auditor uses substantive analytical procedures to obtain audit evidence, the auditor shall:

- (a) Determine the suitability of the substantive analytical procedure for the purpose of the test and for the given assertion(s);
- (b) Evaluate the reliability of data from which the auditor's expectation of recorded amounts or ratios is developed, taking account of source, comparability, and nature and relevance of information available, and controls over its preparation;

- (c) Develop an expectation of recorded amounts or ratios and evaluate whether the expectation is sufficiently precise to identify material misstatements;
- (d) Determine the amount of any difference of recorded amounts from expected values that is acceptable without further investigation being required; and
- (e) Investigate fluctuations or relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information or that differ from expected values by a significant amount by enquiring of management and obtaining appropriate audit evidence relevant to management's responses and performing additional audit procedures as necessary in the circumstances.

*Substantive analytical procedures are generally more applicable to large volumes of transactions that tend to be predictable over time. The application of planned analytical procedures is based on the expectation that relationships among data exist and continue in the absence of known conditions to the contrary. However, the suitability of a particular analytical procedure will depend upon the auditor's assessment of how effective it will be in detecting a misstatement that, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated.*

*The auditor's determination of the amount of difference from the expectation that can be accepted without further investigation is influenced by materiality, taking account of the possibility that a misstatement, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated. As the assessed risk increases, the amount of difference considered acceptable without investigation decreases in order to achieve the desired level of persuasive evidence.*

#### *Automated Tools and Techniques*

*Analytical procedures can be performed using a number of tools or techniques, which may also be automated. The evolution of technology, coupled with the increase in number and variety of sources of data, may create more opportunities for the auditor to use ATT in performing substantive analytical procedures.*

*There are countless information sources available (e.g., social media, free access information sources) to the auditor, and some are more reliable than others. The use of ATT to perform substantive analytical procedures allows the auditor to incorporate information from more sources both internal and external to the entity and also to use much greater volumes of data in the analyses. Nonetheless, the auditor's responsibility for addressing the reliability of data used in substantive analytical procedures is unchanged.*

#### *Audit Sampling*

7.3.17. If the auditor uses audit sampling when responding to assessed risks of material misstatement as a means for selecting items for testing, the auditor shall:

- (a) Consider the purpose of the audit procedures and the characteristics of the population from which the sample will be drawn.
- (b) Determine a sample size sufficient to reduce sampling risk to an acceptably low level.
- (c) Select items in a way that each sampling unit in the population has a chance of selection.
- (d) Perform audit procedures, appropriate to the purpose, on each item selected. If the procedure is not applicable to the selected item, the auditor shall perform the procedure on a replacement item. If the auditor is unable to apply the designed audit procedures, or suitable alternative procedures, to a selected item, the auditor shall treat that item as a



deviation from the prescribed control (in the case of tests of controls) or a misstatement (in the case of tests of details).

- (e) Investigate the nature and cause of any deviations or misstatements identified and evaluate their possible effect on the purpose of the audit procedure and on other areas of the audit.

### *Sample Design*

*When designing an audit sample, the auditor's considerations may include:*

- *The purpose of the test, the combination of audit procedures that is likely to best achieve the purpose, what items to select to meet the purpose and the assertion being addressed.*
- *The nature of the audit evidence sought and the possible deviation or misstatement conditions or other characteristics relating to that audit evidence will assist the auditor in defining what constitutes a deviation or misstatement and what population to use for sampling.*

*The auditor's considerations of the characteristics of a population may include:*

- *Whether the population of items to be tested is appropriate to achieve the test objectives. Sampling will not identify or test items that are not already included within the population. For example, a sample of receivable balances may be used to test the existence of receivables, but such a population would not be appropriate for testing the completeness of receivables.*
- *The size of the population. In some cases, a statistical conclusion may not be drawn if the population to be tested is too small to sample.*

*Audit sampling can be applied using either non-statistical or statistical sampling approaches. Statistical conclusions can be drawn from statistical samples. Non-statistical samples may be used in combination with other audit procedures that address the same assertion.*

### *Sample Size*

*The level of sampling risk that the auditor is willing to accept affects the sample size required. The lower the risk the auditor is willing to accept, the greater the sample size will need to be. Appendix 6 includes examples of factors influencing the sample size for tests of controls and test of details.*

### *Selection of Items for Testing*

*With statistical sampling, sample items are selected in a way that each sampling unit has a known probability of being selected. With non-statistical sampling, judgement is used to select sample items. It is important that the auditor selects a representative sample, so that bias is avoided, by choosing sample items which have characteristics typical of the population.*

*The principal methods of selecting samples are the use of random selection, systematic selection and haphazard selection.*

7.3.18. In the extremely rare circumstances when the auditor considers a misstatement or deviation discovered in a sample to be an anomaly, the auditor shall obtain a high degree of certainty that such misstatement or deviation is not representative of the population. The auditor shall obtain this degree of certainty by performing additional audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the misstatement or deviation does not affect the remainder of the population.

7.3.19. For tests of details, the auditor shall project misstatements found in the sample to the population.

*A misstatement that has been established to be an anomaly need not be projected across the remaining population.*

7.3.20. The auditor shall evaluate:

- (a) The results of the sample; and
- (b) Whether the use of audit sampling has provided a reasonable basis for conclusions about the population that has been tested.

*For tests of controls, an unexpectedly high sample deviation rate may lead to an increase in the assessed risk of material misstatement, unless further audit evidence substantiating the initial assessment is obtained. For tests of details, an unexpectedly high misstatement amount in a sample may cause the auditor to believe that a class of transactions or account balance is materially misstated, in the absence of further audit evidence that no material misstatement exists. Also, in the case of tests of details, the projected misstatement plus anomalous misstatement, if any, is the auditor's best estimate of misstatement in the population.*

*If the auditor concludes that audit sampling has not provided a reasonable basis for conclusions about the population that has been tested, the auditor may:*

- *Request management to investigate misstatements that have been identified and the potential for further misstatements and to make any necessary adjustments; or*
- *Tailor the nature, timing and extent of those further audit procedures to best achieve the required assurance. For example, in the case of tests of controls, the auditor might extend the sample size, test an alternative control or modify related substantive procedures.*

#### *External Confirmations*

7.3.21. The auditor shall consider whether external confirmation procedures are to be performed as substantive procedures.

*External confirmation procedures frequently are relevant when addressing assertions associated with account balances and their elements, but need not be restricted to these items. For example, the auditor may request external confirmation of the terms of agreements, contracts, or transactions between an entity and other parties. External confirmation procedures also may be performed to obtain audit evidence about the absence of certain conditions.*

7.3.22. When using external confirmation procedures, the auditor shall maintain control over:

- (a) Determining the information to be confirmed or requested and selecting the appropriate confirming party;
- (b) Designing the confirmation requests, including determining that requests are properly addressed and contain return information for responses to be sent directly to the auditor; and
- (c) Sending the requests, including follow-up requests when applicable, to the confirming party.

7.3.23. If management refuses to allow the auditor to send a confirmation request, the auditor shall:

- (a) Enquire as to management's reasons for the refusal, and seek audit evidence as to their validity and reasonableness;
- (b) Evaluate the implications of management's refusal on the auditor's assessment of the relevant risks of material misstatement, including the risk of fraud, and on the nature, timing and extent of other audit procedures; and



- (c) Perform alternative audit procedures designed to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence.

7.3.24. If the auditor concludes that management's refusal to allow the auditor to send a confirmation request is unreasonable, or the auditor is unable to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence from alternative audit procedures, the auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance. The auditor also shall determine the implications for the audit and the auditor's opinion.<sup>18</sup>

7.3.25. If the auditor identifies factors that give rise to doubts about the reliability of the response to a confirmation request, the auditor shall obtain further audit evidence to resolve those doubts. If the auditor determines that a response to a confirmation request is not reliable, the auditor shall evaluate the implications on the assessment of the relevant risks of material misstatement, including the risk of fraud, and on the related nature, timing, and extent of other audit procedures.

7.3.26. In the case of each non-response, the auditor shall perform alternative audit procedures to obtain relevant and reliable audit evidence.

7.3.27. The auditor shall investigate exceptions to determine whether they are indicative of misstatements.

7.3.28. The auditor shall evaluate whether the results of the external confirmation procedures, if any, provide relevant and reliable audit evidence, or whether further audit evidence is necessary.

#### 7.4. Specific Focus Areas

##### *Going Concern*

*The auditor's responsibilities are to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding, and conclude:*

- *On the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern basis of accounting in the preparation of the financial statements; and*
- *Based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.*

*These responsibilities exist even if the financial reporting framework used in the preparation of the financial statements does not include an explicit requirement for management to make a specific assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.*

7.4.1. The auditor shall evaluate management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.<sup>19</sup>

*In accordance with the requirements of this Part, the auditor needs to evaluate management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. In many cases, the management of less complex entities may not have prepared a detailed assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, but instead may rely on in-depth knowledge of the business and anticipated future prospects. In such cases, it may be appropriate to discuss the medium- and long-term financing of the entity with management, provided that management's plans can be corroborated by sufficient documentary evidence and are consistent with the auditor's understanding of the entity. Therefore, the auditor's evaluation of going concern, for example, may be satisfied by discussion, enquiry and inspection of supporting documentation.*

<sup>18</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.14.

<sup>19</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.17.

*Continued support by owner-managers is often important to a less complex entity's ability to continue as a going concern. Where a LCE is largely financed by a loan from the owner-manager, it may be important that these funds are not withdrawn. Where an entity is dependent on additional support from the owner-manager, the auditor may evaluate the owner-manager's ability to meet the obligation under the support arrangement. In addition, the auditor may request written confirmation of the terms and conditions attaching to such support and the owner-manager's intention or understanding.*

7.4.2. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ7.4.2. In evaluating management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the auditor shall:

- (a) Cover the same period as used by management, as required by the applicable financial reporting framework. If that period is less than twelve months from the date of the auditor's current report, the auditor shall ask management to extend the period. If management does not make or extend its assessment, the auditor shall consider the implications for the auditor's report.<sup>20</sup>
- (b) Consider whether management's assessment includes all relevant information of which the auditor is aware of as a result of the audit.

*The auditor also remains alert to the possibility that there are known events, scheduled or otherwise, or conditions that will occur beyond the period of assessment used by management that may bring into question management's use of the going concern basis of accounting in preparing the financial statements. The further into the future the events or conditions are, the more significant the going concern issues need to be before the auditor takes further action.*

7.4.3. The auditor shall enquire of management as to its knowledge of events or conditions beyond the period of management's assessment that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

7.4.4. If events or conditions have been identified that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to determine whether a material uncertainty exists through performing additional procedures, including consideration of mitigating factors. These procedures shall include:

- (a) Where management has not yet performed an assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, requesting management to make its assessment.
- (b) Evaluating management's plans for future actions in relation to its going concern assessment, whether the outcome of these plans is likely to improve the situation, and whether management's plans are feasible in the circumstances.
- (c) Where the entity has prepared a cash flow forecast, and analysis of the forecast is a significant factor in considering the future outcome of events or conditions in the evaluation of management's plans for future actions:
  - (i) Evaluating the reliability of the underlying data generated to prepare the forecast; and
  - (ii) Determining whether there is adequate support for the assumptions underlying the forecast.
- (d) Considering whether any additional facts or information have become available since the date on which management made its assessment.

<sup>20</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.20.

*A material uncertainty exists when the magnitude of its potential impact and likelihood of occurrence is such that, in the auditor's professional judgement, appropriate disclosure of the nature and implications of the uncertainty is, for a fair presentation framework, necessary for the fair presentation of the financial statements or, for a compliance framework, necessary for the financial statements not to be misleading.*

7.4.5. If there is significant delay in the approval of the financial statements by management or those charged with governance after the date of the financial statements, the auditor shall enquire as to the reasons for the delay. If the auditor believes that the delay could be related to events or conditions relating to the going concern assessment, the auditor shall perform additional audit procedures as necessary, as well as consider the effect on the auditor's conclusion regarding the existence of a material uncertainty.

#### *Management Override of Controls*

7.4.6. The auditor shall design and perform audit procedures to:

- (a) Test the appropriateness of manual and automated journal entries recorded in the general ledger and other adjustments made in the preparation of the financial statements, including:
  - (i) Making enquiries of individuals involved in the financial reporting process about inappropriate or unusual activity relating to the processing of journal entries and other adjustments;
  - (ii) Selecting journal entries and other adjustments made at the end of a reporting period; and
  - (iii) Considering the need to test journal entries and other adjustments throughout the period.
- (b) Review accounting estimates for biases and evaluate whether the circumstances producing the bias, if any, represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. In performing the review, the auditor shall:
  - (i) Evaluate whether the judgements and decisions made by management indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity's management, even if they are individually reasonable, that may represent a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. If so, the auditor shall re-evaluate the accounting estimates taken as a whole; and
  - (ii) Perform a retrospective review of management judgements and assumptions related to significant accounting estimates reflected in the financial statements of the prior year.
- (c) For significant unusual transactions outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual, evaluate whether the business rationale (or the lack thereof) of the transactions suggests that they may have been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or to conceal misappropriation of assets.
- (d) Respond to the identified risks of management override of controls to the extent not already addressed by (a) to (c).

*Although the level of risk of management override of controls will vary from entity to entity, the risk is nevertheless present in all entities. Due to the unpredictable way in which such override could occur, it is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud and therefore a significant risk.*

*Material misstatement of financial statements due to fraud often involves the manipulation of the financial reporting process by recording inappropriate or unauthorised journal entries. This may occur throughout the year or at period end, or both, or by management making adjustments to*

*amounts reported in the financial statements that are not reflected in journal entries, such as through reclassifications.*

#### *Automated Tools and Techniques*

*In manual general ledger systems, non-standard journal entries may be identified through inspection of ledgers, journals, and supporting documentation. When automated procedures are used to maintain the general ledger and prepare financial statements, such entries may exist only in electronic form and may therefore be more easily identified through the use of ATT.*

#### *Related Parties*

7.4.7. The auditor shall design and perform further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the assessed risks of material misstatement associated with related party relationships and transactions, including inspecting:

- (a) Bank and legal confirmations obtained as part of the auditor's procedures;
- (b) Minutes of meetings of shareholders and of those charged with governance; and
- (c) Such other records or documents as the auditor considers necessary in the circumstances of the entity.

7.4.8. If the auditor identifies arrangements or information that suggests the existence of related party relationships or transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor, the auditor shall determine whether the underlying circumstances confirm the existence of those relationships or transactions.

7.4.9. If the auditor identifies related parties or significant related party transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor, the auditor shall:

- (a) Where the applicable financial reporting framework establishes related party requirements:
  - (i) Request management to identify all transactions with the newly identified related parties for the auditor's further evaluation;
  - (ii) Enquire as to why the entity's controls over related party relationships and transactions failed to enable the identification or disclosure of the related party relationships or transactions;
- (b) Perform appropriate substantive audit procedures for such newly identified related parties or significant related party transactions;
- (c) Reconsider the risk that other related parties or significant related party transactions may exist that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor, and perform additional audit procedures as necessary; and
- (d) If the non-disclosure by management appears intentional (and therefore indicative of a risk of material misstatement due to fraud), evaluate the implications for the audit.

#### Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

7.4.10. If the auditor identifies related parties or significant related party transactions that management has not previously identified or disclosed to the auditor, the auditor shall promptly communicate the relevant information to the other members of the engagement team.

7.4.11. For identified significant related party transactions outside of the entity's normal course of business the auditor shall:

- (a) Inspect the underlying contracts or agreements, if any, and evaluate whether:
  - (i) The business rationale (or lack thereof) of the transactions suggests that they may have been entered into to engage in fraudulent financial reporting or to conceal misappropriation of assets;
  - (ii) The terms of transactions are consistent with management's explanations; and
  - (iii) The transactions have been appropriately accounted for, presented and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- (b) Obtain audit evidence that transactions have been appropriately authorised and approved.

7.4.12. If the auditor identifies significant transactions outside the entity's normal course of business, the auditor shall enquire of management about the nature of these transactions and whether related parties could be involved.

7.4.13. If management has made an assertion in the financial statements to the effect that a related party transaction was conducted on terms equivalent to those prevailing in an arm's length transaction, the auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the assertion.

#### *Accounting Estimates*

7.4.14. The auditor shall design and perform further audit procedures related to accounting estimates to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the assessed risks of material misstatement at the assertion level, including for related disclosures.

7.4.15. The auditor's further audit procedures to respond to assessed risks of material misstatement at the assertion level relating to an accounting estimate shall include one or more of the following approaches:

- (a) Obtaining audit evidence from events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report (see paragraph 7.4.16.).
- (b) Testing how management made the accounting estimate (see paragraphs 7.4.17.–7.4.18.).
- (c) Developing an auditor's point estimate or range (see paragraph 7.4.19.).

*Given the nature of many accounting estimates for an LCE, the final outcome of an accounting estimate may be known before the date of the auditor's report. In these circumstances, audit evidence obtained from events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report may provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence to address the assessed risks of material misstatement. For some accounting estimates, however, events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report may not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether the accounting estimate is reasonable or misstated (e.g., when events or conditions develop only over an extended period). In these circumstances, the auditor's further audit procedures include the approaches in (b) or (c).*

#### Obtaining Audit Evidence from Events Occurring Up to the Date of the Auditor's Report.

7.4.16. When the auditor's further audit procedures include obtaining audit evidence from events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report, the auditor shall evaluate whether the audit evidence is sufficient and appropriate, taking into account any changes in circumstances and other relevant conditions between the event and the measurement date that may affect the relevance of such evidence.

#### Testing How Management Made the Accounting Estimate

7.4.17. When testing how management made the accounting estimate, the auditor's further audit procedures shall address whether:

- (a) The method selected is appropriate;
- (b) The significant assumptions and data are consistent and appropriate, and their integrity maintained in applying the method;
- (c) Changes from prior periods in the method, significant assumptions and data are appropriate;
- (d) Management has the intent to carry out specific courses of actions;
- (e) The judgements made in selecting the method, significant assumptions and data, give rise to indicators of possible management bias. When indicators of possible management bias are identified, the auditor shall evaluate the implications for the audit. Where there is intention to mislead, management bias is fraudulent in nature;
- (f) The data is relevant and reliable in the circumstances; and
- (g) Calculations are mathematically accurate and whether judgements have been applied consistently.

*Method, Significant Assumptions and Data*

*Relevant considerations for the auditor regarding the appropriateness of the method, significant assumptions and data in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework, and, if applicable, the appropriateness of changes from the prior period may include:*

- *Management's rationale for the selection of the method, assumption and data;*
- *Whether the method, assumption and data are appropriate in the circumstances given the nature of the accounting estimate, the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, and the business, industry and environment in which the entity operates;*
- *Whether a change from prior periods in selecting a method, assumption or data is based on new circumstances or new information. When it is not, the change may not be reasonable nor in compliance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Arbitrary changes in an accounting estimate may give rise to material misstatements of the financial statements or may be an indicator of possible management bias.*
- *When management has determined that different methods result in a range of significantly different estimates, how management has investigated the reasons for these differences.*
- *Whether the significant assumptions are inconsistent with each other and with those used in other accounting estimates.*

7.4.18. The auditor's further audit procedures shall address whether, in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework, management has taken appropriate steps to understand estimation uncertainty and address estimation uncertainty by selecting appropriate point estimates and developing related disclosures. When management has not undertaken appropriate steps, the auditor shall:

- (a) Request management to perform additional procedures to understand estimation uncertainty or to address it by reconsidering the selection of management's point estimate or considering providing additional disclosures related to the estimation uncertainty; and
- (b) If the auditor determines that management's response to the auditor's request does not sufficiently address estimation uncertainty, to the extent practicable, develop an auditor's point estimate or range.



*When the applicable financial reporting framework does not specify how to select a point estimate from among reasonably possible outcomes or does not require specific disclosures, the exercise of judgement by management is an important consideration for the auditor regarding the appropriateness of the point estimate selected and the related disclosures.*

*Matters that may be relevant for the auditor regarding management's disclosures about estimation uncertainty include the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, which may require disclosures:*

- *That describe the amount as an accounting estimate and explain the nature and limitations of the process for making it; and*
- *About material accounting policy information related to accounting estimates, which may include significant or critical management judgements as well as significant forward-looking assumptions or other sources of estimation uncertainty.*

#### Developing an Auditor's Point Estimate or Range

7.4.19. When the auditor develops a point estimate or range to evaluate management's point estimate, the auditor's further audit procedures shall include audit procedures to:

- (a) Evaluate whether the methods, assumptions or data used are appropriate in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework; and
- (b) Determine that the range includes only amounts that are supported by sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

*The auditor's decision as to whether to develop a point estimate rather than a range may depend on the nature of the accounting estimate and the auditor's professional judgement in the circumstances. For example, the nature of the accounting estimate may be such that there is expected to be less variability in the reasonably possible outcomes. In these circumstances, developing a point estimate may be an effective approach, particularly when it can be developed with a higher degree of precision.*

*The requirement for the auditor to determine that the range includes only amounts that are supported by sufficient appropriate audit evidence does not mean that the auditor is expected to obtain audit evidence to support each possible outcome in the range individually. Rather, the auditor is likely to obtain evidence to determine that the points at both ends of the range are reasonable in the circumstances, thereby supporting that amounts falling between those two points also are reasonable.*

#### *Inventory*

7.4.20. If inventory is material to the financial statements, the auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory by:

- (a) Unless impracticable, attendance at physical inventory counting, to:
  - (i) Evaluate management's instructions and procedures for recording and controlling the results of the entity's physical inventory counting;
  - (ii) Observe the performance of management's count procedures;
  - (iii) Inspect the inventory; and
  - (iv) Perform test counts;

- (b) Performing audit procedures over the entity's final inventory records to determine whether they accurately reflect actual inventory count results; and
- (c) If the physical inventory counting is at a date other than the date of the financial statements, performing audit procedures to obtain audit evidence about whether changes in inventory between the count date and the date of the financial statements are properly recorded.

7.4.21. If the auditor has not attended the inventory count due to unforeseen circumstances, the auditor shall make or observe some physical counts on an alternative date, and perform audit procedures on intervening transactions. If attendance at physical inventory counting is impracticable, the auditor shall perform alternative audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory, or if not possible, determine the effect on the auditor's report.<sup>21</sup>

*In some cases, attendance at physical inventory counting may be impracticable. This may be due to factors such as the nature and location of the inventory, for example, where inventory is held in a location that may pose threats to the safety of the auditor. The matter of general inconvenience, difficulty, time, or cost involved, however, are not sufficient to support a decision by the auditor that attendance is impracticable. In some cases where attendance is impracticable, alternative audit procedures, for example, inspection of documentation of the subsequent sale of specific inventory items acquired or purchased prior to the physical inventory counting, may provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the existence and condition of inventory. In other cases, however, it may not be possible to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory by performing alternative audit procedures. In such cases, the auditor is required to modify the opinion in the auditor's report as a result of the scope limitation.*

7.4.22. If inventory under the custody and control of a third party is material to the financial statements, the auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of that inventory through confirmation as to the quantities and condition, or performing inspection or other audit procedures appropriate in the circumstances.

#### *Litigation and Claims*

7.4.23. The auditor shall design and perform further audit procedures in order to identify litigation and claims involving the entity which may give rise to a risk of material misstatement, including:

- (a) Enquiry of management and, where applicable, others within the entity, including in-house legal counsel;
- (b) Inspecting minutes of meetings of those charged with governance and correspondence between the entity and its external legal counsel; and
- (c) Inspecting legal expense accounts.

7.4.24. If the auditor assesses a risk of material misstatement regarding litigation or claims that have been identified, or when audit procedures performed indicate that other material litigation or claims may exist, the auditor shall, in addition to the procedures required by this standard, seek direct communication with the entity's external legal counsel. The auditor shall do so through a letter of enquiry, prepared by management and sent by the auditor, requesting the entity's external legal counsel to communicate directly with the auditor.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>21</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.15.

<sup>22</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.14.



7.4.25. The auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor's report,<sup>23</sup> if:

- (a) Management refuses to give the auditor permission to communicate or meet with the entity's external legal counsel, or the entity's external legal counsel refuses to respond appropriately to the letter of enquiry, or is prohibited from responding; and
- (b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative audit procedures.

*Audit Procedures When Non-Compliance with Law or Regulation is Identified or Suspected*

7.4.26. The auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding compliance with the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognised to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.<sup>24</sup>

7.4.27. If the auditor becomes aware of information concerning an instance of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws or regulations, the auditor shall:

- (a) Understand the nature and circumstances, and obtain further information necessary to evaluate the possible effect on the financial statements;
- (b) Discuss the non-compliance with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, unless prohibited to do so by law or regulation;
- (c) If sufficient information about suspected non-compliance cannot be obtained, evaluate the effect of the lack of sufficient appropriate audit evidence on the auditor's opinion; and
- (d) Evaluate the implications on other aspects of the audit, including the auditor's risk assessment and the reliability of written representations and take appropriate action.<sup>25</sup>

*Using the Services of a Service Organisation*

7.4.28. If the entity is using the services of a service organisation, the auditor shall:

- (a) Determine whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence concerning the relevant financial statement assertions is available at the entity; and, if not,
- (b) Perform further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

*To obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the following procedures may be considered by the auditor:*

- *Inspect records and documents held by the user entity;*
- *Inspect records and documents held by the service organisation;*
- *Obtain confirmations of balances and transactions from the service organisation in instances where the user entity maintains its own independent records of balances and transactions.*

*Using the Work of Management's Expert*

7.4.29. If information to be used as audit evidence has been prepared using the work of management's expert, the auditor shall, having regard to the significance of that expert's work for the auditor's purpose, evaluate the appropriateness of the expert's work as audit evidence for the relevant assertion.

<sup>23</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.16.

<sup>24</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.10.

<sup>25</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraphs 9.5.11., 9.5.12. and 9.5.13.

*Considerations when evaluating the appropriateness of the management's expert's work may include:*

- *The relevance and reasonableness of that expert's findings or conclusions, their consistency with other audit evidence, and whether they have been appropriately reflected in the financial statements;*
- *If that expert's work involves use of significant assumptions and methods, the relevance and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods;*
- *If that expert's work involves significant use of source data, the relevance, completeness, and accuracy of that source data; and*
- *If that expert's work involves the use of information from an external information source, the relevance and reliability of that information.*

#### *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*

7.4.30. When the auditor has determined to use the work of an auditor's expert, the auditor shall evaluate the adequacy of the auditor's expert's work, including:

- (a) The relevance and reasonableness of that expert's findings or conclusions, and their consistency with other audit evidence;
- (b) If that expert's work involves use of significant assumptions and methods, the relevance and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods in the circumstances; and
- (c) If that expert's work involves the use of source data that is significant to that expert's work, the relevance, completeness, and accuracy of that source data.

7.4.31. If the auditor determines that the work of the auditor's expert is not adequate for the auditor's purposes, the auditor shall agree on further work to be done by that expert or perform additional audit procedures appropriate to the circumstances.

### **7.5. Accumulation of Misstatements**

7.5.1. The auditor shall accumulate misstatements identified during the audit, other than those that are clearly trivial.

*Misstatements that are clearly trivial will be of a wholly different (smaller) order of magnitude, or of a wholly different nature than those that would be determined to be material, and will be misstatements that are clearly inconsequential, whether taken individually or in aggregate and whether judged by any criteria of nature, size or circumstances. When there is any uncertainty about whether one or more items are clearly trivial, the misstatement is considered not to be clearly trivial.*

7.5.2. The auditor shall request management to correct all misstatements accumulated during the audit.

7.5.3. If, at the auditor's request, management has examined a class of transactions, account balance or disclosure and corrected misstatements that were detected, the auditor shall perform additional audit procedures to determine whether misstatements remain.

*Such a request may be made, for example, based on the auditor's projection of misstatements identified in an audit sample to the entire population from which it was drawn.*

7.5.4. If the auditor identifies a misstatement during the audit, the auditor shall evaluate whether the misstatement is indicative of fraud. If there is such an indication, the auditor shall determine the implications on other aspects of the audit, including on the identified and assessed risks of material misstatement and the reliability of management representations.

*Since fraud involves incentive or pressure to commit fraud, a perceived opportunity to do so or some rationalisation of the act, an instance of fraud is unlikely to be an isolated occurrence. Accordingly, misstatements, such as numerous misstatements even though the cumulative effect is not material, may be indicative of a risk of material misstatement due to fraud.*

7.5.5. If the auditor identifies a misstatement that may be the result of fraud, and suspects that management is involved, the auditor shall:

- (a) Re-evaluate the risks of material misstatement due to fraud and the auditor's responses thereto; or
- (b) Consider whether circumstances or conditions indicate possible collusion involving employees, management or third parties when reconsidering the reliability of evidence previously obtained.

*The implications of identified or suspected fraud depends on the circumstances. For example, an otherwise insignificant fraud may be significant if it involves senior management. In such circumstances, the reliability of evidence previously obtained may be called into question, since there may be doubts about the completeness and truthfulness of representations made and about the genuineness of accounting records and documentation. There may also be a possibility of collusion involving employees, management or third parties.*

7.5.6. The auditor shall determine whether the scope, timing and direction of the audit needs to be revised if:

- (a) The nature of identified misstatements and the circumstances of their occurrence indicate that other misstatements may exist that, when aggregated with misstatements accumulated during the audit, could be material; and
- (b) The aggregate of misstatements accumulated during the audit approaches materiality.

## **7.6. Specific Communication Requirements**

7.6.1. On a timely basis, the auditor shall communicate:

- (a) To those charged with governance, in writing, significant deficiencies in the entity's system of internal control identified during the audit.
- (b) To management:
  - (i) In writing, matters that have been communicated to those charged with governance (unless it would be inappropriate to communicate directly with management in the circumstances); and
  - (ii) Other deficiencies in internal control identified that have not been communicated but are of sufficient importance to merit management's attention.

7.6.2. In respect of communication of significant deficiencies to those charged with governance, the auditor shall include a description and explanation of the potential impact of the deficiencies, and sufficient information to understand the context of the communication.

*In describing the context of the auditor's communication, the auditor may explain that:*

- *The purpose of the audit was for the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements;*
- *The audit included consideration of internal control relevant to the preparation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control; and*

- *The matters being reported are limited to those deficiencies that the auditor has identified during the audit and that the auditor has concluded are of sufficient importance to merit being reported to those charged with governance.*

7.6.3. In communicating with management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, the auditor shall consider if there are any matters to communicate regarding accounting estimates. In doing so, the auditor shall consider whether the reasons given to the risks of material misstatement relate to estimation uncertainty, or the effects of complexity, subjectivity, change, or management bias in making accounting estimates and related disclosures.

## 7.7. Specific Documentation Requirements

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

7.7.1. The auditor shall include the following in the audit documentation:

- The overall responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement at the financial statement level;
- The linkage between the procedures performed and the assessed risks at the assertion level;
- The results of the audit procedures, including the conclusions where these are not otherwise clear;
- The results of audit procedures designed to address the risk of management override of controls;
- All misstatements accumulated during the audit and whether they have been corrected; and
- If the auditor plans to use audit evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls obtained in previous audits, the conclusions reached about relying on such controls that were tested in a previous audit.

7.7.2. Where the assessed risk of material misstatement is due to fraud, the auditor's documentation shall include the specific fraud response.

7.7.3. Where the auditor has identified or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations, the auditor shall document:

- The results of discussion with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance and others; including how the matter has been responded to; and
- The audit procedures performed, the significant professional judgements made, and the conclusions reached thereon.

7.7.4. In respect of accounting estimates, the auditor shall document significant judgements relating to the auditor's determination of whether the accounting estimates and related disclosures are reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework, or are misstated.

## **8. Concluding**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 8 sets out the requirements for:

- Evaluating corrected and uncorrected misstatements identified during the audit.
- Evaluating subsequent events.
- Concluding activities, including the related evaluations.
- Concluding on going concern and related disclosures.
- Obtaining written representations and performing concluding analytical procedures.

### *Scope of this Part*

The evaluations performed and the conclusions reached will form the basis for the auditor's opinion in Part 9.

### **8.1. Objectives**

8.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are to:

- (a) Evaluate, the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and the effect of any uncorrected misstatements on the financial statements;
- (b) Conclude, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern; and
- (c) Conclude on whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained on which to base the auditor's opinion.

### **8.2. Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit**

8.2.1. If management refuses to correct some or all of the misstatements communicated by the auditor, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of management's reasons for not making the corrections and shall take that understanding into account when evaluating whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

8.2.2. Prior to evaluating the effect of uncorrected misstatements, the auditor shall reassess materiality to confirm whether it remains appropriate in the context of the entity's actual financial results.

8.2.3. The auditor shall determine whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate, by considering the:

- (a) Nature and size of the misstatements, both in relation to particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures and the financial statements as a whole, and the particular circumstances of their occurrence; and
- (b) Effect of uncorrected misstatements related to prior periods on the relevant classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures, and the financial statements as a whole.

### **8.3. Analytical Procedures that Assist When Forming an Overall Conclusion**

8.3.1. The auditor shall design and perform analytical procedures near the end of the audit that assist the auditor when forming an overall conclusion as to whether the financial statements are

consistent with the auditor's understanding of the entity, and to identify any indications of a previously unidentified risk of material misstatement due to fraud.

8.3.2. The auditor shall investigate fluctuations or relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information obtained during the course of the audit, by enquiring of management and performing other audit procedures as necessary in the circumstances.

#### 8.4. Subsequent Events

*Financial statements may be affected by certain events that occur after the date of the financial statements. Many financial reporting frameworks specifically refer to such events. Such financial reporting frameworks ordinarily identify two types of events:*

- *Those that provide evidence of conditions that existed at the date of the financial statements; and*
- *Those that provide evidence of conditions that arose after the date of the financial statements.*

*The auditor is not, however, expected to perform additional procedures on matters to which previously applied audit procedures have provided satisfactory conclusions.*

##### *Events Occurring Between the Date of the Financial Statements and the Date of the Auditor's Report*

8.4.1. The auditor shall perform audit procedures designed to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that all events occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, the financial statements have been identified.

8.4.2. The auditor shall perform those procedures in accordance with paragraph 8.4.1. for the period from the date of the financial statements to the date of the auditor's report, or as near as practicable thereto, including:

- (a) Obtaining an understanding of any procedures management has established to ensure that subsequent events are identified.
- (b) Enquiring of management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, as to whether any subsequent events have occurred that may affect the financial statements.
- (c) Reading minutes of meetings of the owners, management and those charged with governance held after the balance sheet date and enquiring about matters discussed at any such meetings for which minutes are not yet available.
- (d) Reading the entity's monthly or quarterly financial information, if available.

8.4.3. If the auditor has identified events that require adjustment to the financial statements or disclosures therein to comply with the entity's applicable financial reporting framework when performing the procedures in paragraphs 8.4.1. and 8.4.2, the auditor shall determine whether each such event is appropriately reflected in the financial statements.

##### *Facts Which Become Known to the Auditor After the Date of the Auditor's Report but Before the Date the Financial Statements Are Issued*

8.4.4. The auditor has no obligation to perform any audit procedures regarding the financial statements after the date of the auditor's report. However, if the auditor becomes aware of facts or events that, had it been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report but before the financial statements are issued, may have caused the auditor to amend the auditor's report, the auditor shall discuss with management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance, and

determine whether the financial statements need amendment and, if so, enquire how management intends to address the matter.

8.4.5. If management amends the financial statements, the auditor shall carry out the audit procedures necessary in the circumstances on the amendment, including extending the audit procedures performed to the date of the new auditor's report and providing a new auditor's report on the amended financial statements.

8.4.6. In jurisdictions where management is not required by law, regulation or the financial reporting framework to issue amended financial statements, the auditor need not provide an amended or new auditor's report. However, if management does not amend the financial statements in circumstances where the auditor believes they need to be amended, then the auditor shall:

- (a) If the auditor's report has not yet been provided to the entity modify the opinion and then provide the auditor's report;<sup>26</sup> or
- (b) If the auditor's report has already been provided to the entity, notify management and those charged with governance not to issue the financial statements to third parties before the necessary amendments have been made. If the financial statements are nevertheless subsequently issued without the necessary amendments, the auditor shall take appropriate action to seek to prevent reliance on the auditor's report.

*Facts Which Become Known to the Auditor After the Financial Statements Have Been Issued*

8.4.7. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ8.4.7. After the financial statements have been issued, the auditor has no obligation to perform any audit procedures regarding such financial statements. However, if, after the financial statements have been issued, a fact becomes known to the auditor that, had it been known to the auditor at the date of the auditor's report, may have caused the auditor to amend the auditor's report, the auditor shall:

- (a) Discuss the matter with management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance within a reasonable period of time;
- (b) Determine whether the financial statements need amendment; and, if so,
- (c) Enquire how management intends to address the matter in the financial statements.

8.4.8. If management amends the financial statements, the auditor shall:

- (a) Carry out the audit procedures necessary in the circumstances on the amendment, including:
  - (i) Extending the audit procedures referred to in paragraphs 8.4.1. and 8.4.2. to the date of the new auditor's report, and date the new auditor's report no earlier than the date of approval of the amended financial statements; and
  - (ii) Providing a new auditor's report<sup>27</sup> on the amended financial statements; and
- (b) Review the steps taken by management to ensure that anyone in receipt of the previously issued financial statements together with the auditor's report thereon is informed of the situation.

8.4.9. If management does not take the necessary steps to ensure that anyone in receipt of the previously issued financial statements is informed of the situation and does not amend the

<sup>26</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.21.

<sup>27</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.6.7.

financial statements in circumstances where the auditor believes they need to be amended, the auditor shall take appropriate action to seek to prevent reliance on the auditor's report.

## 8.5. The Auditor's Evaluations and Other Activities to Support the Auditor's Conclusion

### *Evaluations Required*

8.5.1. Based on the audit procedures performed and the audit evidence obtained, the auditor shall evaluate whether the assessments of the risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and assertion levels remain appropriate.

*An audit of financial statements is a cumulative and iterative process. As the auditor performs planned audit procedures, the audit evidence obtained may cause the auditor to modify the nature, timing or extent of planned audit procedures. Information may come to the auditor's attention that differs significantly from the information on which the risk assessment was based. In such circumstances, the auditor may need to re-evaluate the planned audit procedures, based on the revised consideration of assessed risks for all or some of the classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures and related assertions.*

*The auditor may also consider whether such information changes the auditor's determination about the appropriateness of use of the ISA (NZ) for LCE for the audit, which may necessitate a modification to the terms of engagement.*

8.5.2. For accounting estimates, the auditor shall evaluate, based on the audit procedures performed and audit evidence obtained, whether:

- (a) The assessments of the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level remain appropriate, including when indicators of possible management bias have been identified; and
- (b) Management's decisions about the recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of accounting estimates in the financial statements are reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework.

8.5.3. The auditor shall evaluate whether two-way communication between the auditor and those charged with governance has been adequate for the purpose of the audit. If it has not, the auditor shall evaluate the effect, if any, on the audit and take action as appropriate.

*For example, the original risk assessments may need to be revised, the auditor's opinion may need to be modified on the basis of a scope limitation or other actions may need to be taken as appropriate.*

8.5.4. The auditor shall perform audit procedures to evaluate whether the overall presentation of the financial statements is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. In making this evaluation, the auditor shall consider whether the financial statements are presented in a manner that reflects the appropriate:

- (a) Classification and description of financial information and the underlying transactions, events and conditions; and
- (b) Presentation, structure and content of the financial statements.

### *Concluding*

8.5.5. The auditor shall conclude whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained. In forming an opinion, the auditor shall consider all relevant audit evidence, regardless of whether it appears to be corroborative or contradictory.



8.5.6. If the auditor has not obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence as to a relevant assertion, the auditor shall attempt to obtain additional audit evidence. If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall express a qualified opinion or disclaim an opinion on the financial statements.<sup>28</sup>

8.5.7. The auditor shall evaluate whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained regarding, and shall conclude on, the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern basis of accounting in the preparation of the financial statements.<sup>29</sup>

8.5.8. The auditor shall conclude, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether in the auditor's professional judgement, a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that, individually or collectively, may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.<sup>30</sup>

8.5.9. If the auditor concludes that management's use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate in the circumstances but a material uncertainty exists, the auditor shall determine whether the financial statements:

- (a) Adequately disclose the principal events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and management's plans to deal with these events or conditions; and
- (b) Disclose clearly that there is a material uncertainty related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and, therefore, that it may be unable to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business.

In such cases, the auditor shall express an unmodified opinion and the auditor's report shall include a separate section under the heading "Material Uncertainty Relating to Going Concern".

8.5.10. If events or conditions have been identified that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern but, based on the audit evidence obtained the auditor concludes that no material uncertainty exists, the auditor shall evaluate whether, in view of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, the financial statements provide adequate disclosures about these events or conditions.

8.5.11. If the auditor confirms that, or is unable to conclude whether, the financial statements are materially misstated as a result of fraud, the auditor shall evaluate the implications on the audit including on the assessed risks of material misstatement and the auditor's report.

## 8.6. Written Representations

*[NZ] Written representations are necessary information that the auditor requests in connection with the audit of the entity's financial statements. Accordingly, similar to responses to enquiries, written representations are audit evidence. However, although written representations provide necessary audit evidence, they do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on their own about any of the matters with which they deal. Furthermore, the fact that those charged with governance, or management, have provided reliable written representations does not affect the nature or extent of other audit evidence that the auditor obtains about the fulfilment of those charged with governance's, or management's, responsibilities, or about specific assertions.*

<sup>28</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.27.

<sup>29</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.17.

<sup>30</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.18.

*[NZ] Written representations are requested from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements. Those individuals may vary depending on the governance structure of the entity, and relevant law or regulation; however, those charged with governance (rather than management) are often the responsible party. In some circumstances, however, other parties, such as management, are also responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.* 8.6.1.  
[Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ8.6.1. The auditor shall obtain written representations from those charged with governance who have appropriate knowledge of the matters concerned and responsibility for the financial statements, about the following matters:

- (a) That they have fulfilled their responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, including where relevant their fair presentation. The responsibilities shall be described in the same way in the representation as described in the terms of engagement;
- (b) That they have provided the auditor with all relevant information and access as agreed in the terms of the audit engagement;
- (c) That all transactions are recorded and are reflected in the financial statements;
- (d) That they acknowledge their responsibility for the design, implementation and maintenance of controls to prevent and detect fraud;
- (e) That they have disclosed to the auditor the result of its assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated because of fraud;
- (f) That their knowledge of fraud, or suspected fraud, or allegations of fraud or suspected fraud has been disclosed to the auditor;
- (g) That they have disclosed to the auditor the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which they are aware;
- (h) That they have appropriately accounted for and disclosed related party relationships and transactions in accordance with the requirements of the financial reporting framework;
- (i) That all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor;
- (j) That all known actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor and accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- (k) With respect to accounting estimates, whether the methods, significant assumptions and data used in making the accounting estimates and disclosures are appropriate to achieve recognition, measurement or disclosure is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- (l) That all events occurring subsequent to the date of the financial statements and for which the applicable financial reporting framework requires adjustment or disclosure have been adjusted or disclosed;
- (m) With respect to going concern, if a material uncertainty exists, information about their plans for future actions and the feasibility of these plans;
- (n) Regarding any restatement made to correct a material misstatement in prior period financial statements that affect the comparative information; and

- (o) Other representations the auditor determines necessary to support other audit evidence relevant to the financial statements or one or more specific assertions in the financial statements, including where necessary to support oral representations.

8.6.2. The auditor shall consider the need to obtain representations about specific accounting estimates.

8.6.3. The written representation shall be in the form of a representation letter addressed to the auditor. *Appendix 7 sets out an illustrative representation letter.*

*If law or regulation requires management to make written public statements about its responsibilities, and the auditor determines that such statements provide some or all of the representations required by this standard, the relevant matters covered by such statements need not be included in the representation letter.*

*[NZ] If the auditor intends to rely on some, or all, of the written representations made by those charged with governance in a written public statement, the auditor ordinarily communicates their intention to place such reliance.*

8.6.4. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ8.6.4. The auditor shall request a written representation from those charged with governance, whether they believe the effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, individually or in aggregate, to the financial statements as a whole. A summary of such items shall be included in or attached to the written representation.

8.6.5. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ8.6.5. If the auditor has concerns about the competence, integrity, ethical values, or diligence of management or those charged with governance, or about its commitment to or enforcement of these, or representations received are inconsistent with other audit evidence, the auditor shall determine the effect on audit evidence more generally and take appropriate actions, including considering the possible effect on the opinion in the auditor's report<sup>31</sup> having regard to the requirement in paragraph 8.6.7.

*In the case of identified inconsistencies between one or more written representations and audit evidence obtained from another source, the auditor may consider whether the risk assessment remains appropriate and, if not, revise the risk assessment and determine the nature, timing and extent of further audit procedures to respond to the assessed risks.*

*[NZ] Concerns about the competence, integrity, ethical values or diligence of management or those charged with governance, or about its commitment to or enforcement of these, may cause the auditor to conclude that the risk of management misrepresentation in the financial statements is such that an audit cannot be conducted. In such a case, the auditor may consider withdrawing from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, unless those charged with governance put in place appropriate corrective measures. Such measures, however, may not be sufficient to enable the auditor to issue an unmodified audit opinion.*

8.6.6. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ8.6.6. If management or those charged with governance does not provide one or more of the requested written representations, the auditor shall:

- (a) Discuss the matter with management;

<sup>31</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.22.

- (b) Re-evaluate the integrity of management and evaluate the effect this may have on the reliability of oral and written representations and audit evidence in general; and
- (c) Take appropriate actions, including determining the possible effect on the opinion in the auditor's report<sup>32</sup> having regard to the requirement in paragraph 8.6.7.

#### 8.6.7. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ8.6.7. If the auditor concludes that there is sufficient doubt about the integrity of those charged with governance such that the written representations required by paragraphs 8.6.1.(a)–(c) are not reliable<sup>33</sup> or management does not provide the written representations required by paragraphs 8.6.1.(a)–(c),<sup>34</sup> the auditor shall disclaim an opinion on the financial statements.

8.6.8. The date of the written representations shall be as near as practicable to, but not after, the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements. The written representations shall be for all financial statements and period(s) referred to in the auditor's report.

### 8.7. Taking Overall Responsibility for Managing and Achieving Quality

8.7.1. Prior to dating the auditor's report, the engagement partner shall determine that the engagement partner has taken overall responsibility for managing and achieving quality on the audit engagement. In doing so, the engagement partner shall determine that:

- (a) The engagement partner's involvement has been sufficient and appropriate throughout the audit engagement such that the engagement partner has the basis for determining that the significant judgements made, and the conclusions reached, are appropriate given the nature and circumstances of the engagement; and
- (b) The nature and circumstances of the audit engagement, any changes thereto, and the firm's related policies or procedures have been taken into account.

8.7.2. On or before the date of the auditor's report, the engagement partner shall determine that sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained to support the conclusions reached and for the auditor's report to be issued.

8.7.3. Prior to dating the auditor's report, the engagement partner shall review the financial statements and the auditor's report to determine that the report to be issued is appropriate in the circumstances.

### 8.8. Specific Communication Requirements

8.8.1. The auditor shall communicate, on a timely basis, all misstatements accumulated during the audit with the appropriate level of management, unless prohibited by law or regulation.

8.8.2. The auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance:

- (a) Uncorrected misstatements and the effect that they, individually or in aggregate, may have on the auditor's opinion, unless prohibited by law or regulation. The auditor's communication shall identify the material uncorrected misstatements individually.
- (b) The effect of uncorrected misstatements from prior periods on the current year's financial statements.
- (c) The auditor's views about significant qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, including accounting policies, accounting estimates, and financial statement disclosures.

<sup>32</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.23.

<sup>33</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.24.

<sup>34</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.25.

- (d) Significant difficulties, if any, encountered during the audit.
- (e) Significant matters arising during the audit, including in connection to the entity's related parties, that were discussed, or subject to correspondence, with management.
- (f) Significant findings from the audit. If, in the auditor's professional judgement, oral communications would not be adequate this communication shall be in writing.
- (g) Other matters not already reported related to fraud that may be relevant to the responsibilities of those charged with governance, unless prohibited by law or regulation.
- (h) Circumstances, if any, that affect the form and content of the auditor's report.
- (i) Written representations the auditor is requesting.
- (j) Other significant matters, if any, arising from the audit that, in the auditor's professional judgement, are relevant to the oversight of the financial reporting process.
- (k) The expectation thereof and the wording if the auditor expects to include an Emphasis of Matter or Other Matter Paragraph in the auditor's report.

8.8.3. Unless all those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, the auditor shall communicate with those charged with governance events or conditions identified that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, including:

- (a) Whether the events or conditions constitute a material uncertainty;
- (b) Whether management's use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate in the preparation of the financial statements;
- (c) The adequacy of related disclosures in the financial statements; and
- (d) Where applicable, the implications for the auditor's report.

## 8.9. Specific Documentation Requirements

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

8.9.1. The auditor shall include the following in the audit documentation:

- (a) All misstatements accumulated during the audit and whether they have been corrected, and the auditor's conclusion as to whether the uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate, and the basis for that conclusion; and
- (b) The nature and scope of, and conclusions from, consultations undertaken during the audit, including how such conclusions were implemented.

8.9.2. The auditor's documentation shall demonstrate that information in the financial statements agrees or reconciles with the underlying accounting records, including agreeing or reconciling disclosures, whether such information is obtained from within or outside of the general and subsidiary ledgers.

8.9.3. The auditor shall assemble the audit documentation in an audit file and complete the administrative process of assembling the final audit file on a timely basis after the date of the auditor's report.

*PES 3(or national requirements that are at least as demanding) requires firms' systems of quality management to establish a quality objective that addresses the assembly of engagement*

*documentation on a timely basis after the date of the engagement reports.<sup>35</sup> An appropriate time limit within which to complete the assembly of the final audit file is ordinarily not more than 60 days after the date of the auditor's report.<sup>36</sup>*

- 8.9.4. After assembly of the final audit file is complete, the auditor shall not delete or discard audit documentation of any nature before the end of its retention period.

*PES 3(or national requirements that are at least as demanding) requires firms' systems of quality management to establish a quality objective to addresses the appropriate maintenance and retention of engagement documentation to meet the needs of the firm and to comply with law, regulation, relevant ethical requirements, or professional standards.<sup>37</sup> The retention period for audit engagements ordinarily is no shorter than five years from the date of the auditor's report, or, if later, the date of the auditor's report on the group financial statements, when applicable.<sup>38</sup>*

- 8.9.5. If applicable, the auditor shall document the failure to meet an objective of any Part of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, and the resulting action (such as the effect on the auditor's opinion or withdrawal from the engagement if the overall objective of the auditor cannot be met).

- 8.9.6. If the auditor finds it necessary to modify existing audit documentation or add new audit documentation after the assembly of the final audit file has been completed, the auditor shall, regardless of the nature of the modifications or additions, document:

- (a) The specific reasons for making them; and
- (b) When and by whom they were made and reviewed.

---

<sup>35</sup> PES 3, paragraph 31(f)

<sup>36</sup> PES 3, paragraph A83

<sup>37</sup> PES 3, paragraph 31(f)

<sup>38</sup> PES 3, paragraph A85

## **9. Forming an Opinion and Reporting**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 9 sets out the requirements for:

- Forming an opinion;
- The types of audit opinions; and
- The content of the auditor's report.
- Other Information and Comparative Information.

### *Scope of this Part*

This Part explains the content of the auditor's report and sets out the auditor's determination of modifications to the opinion, as well as when other amendments to the auditor's report are needed. It also sets out the auditor's required procedures in relation to corresponding figures and comparative financial statements, and other information (if applicable).

Examples of modified opinions, a material uncertainty related to going concern, emphasis of matter and other matter paragraphs, and related guidance on auditor reports, can be found in the *Auditor Reporting Supplemental Guide*.

### **9.1. Objectives**

9.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are to:

- (a) Form an opinion on the financial statements based on an evaluation of the conclusions drawn from the audit evidence obtained and to express clearly that opinion through a written report; and
- (b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information, if any, and the:
  - (i) Financial statements; and
  - (ii) Auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.

### **9.2. Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements**

9.2.1. The auditor shall form an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

9.2.2. In order to form that opinion, the auditor shall conclude as to whether the auditor has obtained reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. That conclusion shall take into account:

- (a) Whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained;
- (b) Whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate; and
- (c) The evaluations required by paragraphs 9.2.3. to 9.2.6.

9.2.3. The auditor shall evaluate whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework. This evaluation shall include consideration of the qualitative aspects of the entity's accounting practices, including indicators of possible bias in management's judgements.

9.2.4. In performing the evaluation in paragraph 9.2.3., the auditor shall evaluate, in view of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, whether:

- (a) The financial statements appropriately disclose the entity's significant accounting policies, and whether they have been presented in an understandable way;
- (b) The entity's accounting policies selected and applied are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and are appropriate;
- (c) The accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management are reasonable;
- (d) The identified related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately accounted for, presented and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- (e) The information presented in the financial statements is relevant, reliable, comparable and understandable including whether:
  - (i) The information that should have been included has been included;
  - (ii) Such information is appropriately classified, aggregated or disaggregated, and characterized; and
  - (iii) The overall presentation of the financial statements has been undermined by including information that is not relevant or that obscures a proper understanding of the matters disclosed;
- (f) The financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statements; and
- (g) The terminology used in the financial statements, including the title of each financial statement, is appropriate.

9.2.5. When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor shall also evaluate whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation. This evaluation shall include consideration of:

- (a) The overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements; and
- (b) Whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

*The auditor's evaluation about whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation, both in respect of presentation and the disclosures necessary to achieve it, is a matter of professional judgement.*

9.2.6. The auditor shall evaluate whether the financial statements adequately refer to or describe the applicable financial reporting framework.

### 9.3. Form of Opinion

9.3.1. The auditor shall express an unmodified opinion when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

*If the financial reporting framework is a fair presentation framework, as is generally the case for general purpose financial statements, the opinion required is on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, or give a true and fair view. If the financial reporting framework is a compliance framework, the opinion required is on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the framework.*



9.3.2. If financial statements prepared in accordance with the requirements of a fair presentation framework do not achieve fair presentation, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, depending on the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework and how the matter is resolved, determine whether to modify the opinion.<sup>39</sup>

9.3.3. If the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the auditor is not required to evaluate whether the financial statements achieve fair presentation. However, if in extremely rare circumstances the auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that such financial statements are misleading, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, depending on how it is resolved, shall determine whether, and how, to communicate it in the auditor's report.<sup>40</sup>

#### 9.4. Auditor's Report

9.4.1. [Amended by the NZAuASB]

NZ9.4.1. The auditor shall report in accordance with the specified format and content below unless:

- (a) Amendment to the auditor's report is required for compliance with a specific layout or wording of the auditor's report required by law or regulation of a jurisdiction. When the layout or wording of the auditor's report is prescribed by law or regulation, the auditor's report shall refer to this ISA (NZ) for LCE only if the elements of the specified format and content illustrated below are included; or
- (b) The auditor's report includes a modified opinion, emphasis of matter paragraph, other matter paragraph, material uncertainty related to going concern, other reporting responsibilities, or a separate section dealing with Other Information, in which case the auditor shall modify the auditor's opinion (according to Part 9.5.) or amend the auditor's report (according to Part 9.8.).

NZ9.4.1.A. An auditor, when applying this standard, is required to conduct an audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE. Compliance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE will also mean the auditor has complied with the ISA for LCE in the conduct of the audit. In this case, the auditor's report may refer to the ISA for LCE in addition to the ISA (NZ) for LCE only if the auditor's report includes the elements of the specified format and content illustrated below.

---

<sup>39</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.28.

<sup>40</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.29.

## **INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT**

To the [Shareholders of ABC Company or Other Appropriate Addressee]<sup>41</sup>

### **Opinion**

We have audited<sup>42</sup> the financial statements of [ABC Company (the Entity)], which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20XX, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies (replace these report names with the appropriate titles)].<sup>43</sup>

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements ["present fairly, in all material respects" or "give a true and fair view of"]<sup>44</sup> the financial position of the [Entity] as at [December 31, 20XX], and [of] its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework] issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board.<sup>45</sup>

### **Basis for Opinion**

We conducted our audit in accordance with the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (the ISA (NZ) for LCE). Our responsibilities under the ISA (NZ) for LCE are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report.<sup>46</sup> We are independent of the [Entity] in accordance with *Professional and Ethical Standard 1 International Code of Ethics for Assurance Practitioners (including International Independence Standards (New Zealand))* issued by the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.<sup>47</sup>

Other than in our capacity as auditor we have no relationship with, or interests in, the [Entity].<sup>48</sup>

### **Responsibilities of [Those Charged with Governance] for the Financial Statements<sup>49</sup>**

[Those Charged with Governance] are responsible on behalf of the [Entity] for the preparation [and fair presentation] of the financial statements in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework],<sup>50</sup> and for such internal control as [Those Charged with Governance] determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, [Those Charged with Governance] are responsible for assessing the [Entity's] ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless [Those Charged with Governance] either intends to liquidate the [Entity] or to cease operations, or have no realistic alternative but to do so.

### **Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements<sup>51 52</sup>**

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

As part of an audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE, we exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to

fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the [Entity's] internal control.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting

<sup>41</sup> Matters reflected in the specified format and content of the auditor's report in square brackets (e.g. [ ]) are to be tailored accordingly.

<sup>42</sup> When disclaiming an opinion, the statement which indicates that the financial statements have been audited is amended to state that the auditor was engaged to audit the financial statements.

<sup>43</sup> Identify the entity whose financial statements have been audited; identify each financial statement and its date and period, and refer to the notes and significant accounting policies or use another appropriate description in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

<sup>44</sup> See also 9.4.2. below. When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the opinion and description of the auditor's responsibilities refer instead to whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

<sup>45</sup> [NZ] Identify the jurisdiction of origin of the financial reporting framework if it is not International Financial Reporting Standards or International Public Sector Accounting Standards as issued by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board. For an entity in New Zealand, that is required to apply the New Zealand Accounting Standards Framework, the reference to the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor's opinion should be to the applicable financial reporting requirements issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board that apply to the tier under which the entity is reporting.

<sup>46</sup> When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, this statement is not included in the auditor's report.

<sup>47</sup> When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion, the statement about whether the audit evidence obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's opinion is amended to include the word "qualified" or "adverse", as appropriate. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, this statement is not included in the auditor's report.

<sup>48</sup> [NZ] If the auditor has any relationship (other than that of auditor) with, or any interests in, the entity, then this statement is amended.

<sup>49</sup> [NZ] Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction. In New Zealand, the appropriate reference is usually to those charged with governance. In some jurisdictions, the appropriate reference may be to management.

<sup>50</sup> [NZ] Where Those Charged with Governance's responsibility is to prepare financial statements that give a true and fair view, this may read: "Those Charged with Governance are responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework], and for such ..."

<sup>51</sup> [NZ] The description of the auditor's responsibilities may also be included within an appendix, or refer to a description to the relevant page of the auditors responsibilities on the External Reporting Board's website at <https://www.xrb.govt.nz/standards/assurance-standards/auditors-responsibilities/>. The auditor shall determine that such a description is not inconsistent with this ISA (NZ) for LCE. In such cases, a reference to the location of appendix or description shall be included within the auditor's report, accompanied by "This description forms part of our auditor's report". When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, the description of the auditor's responsibilities only includes the matters required by paragraph 9.5.33.

<sup>52</sup> When Part 10 applies, further describe the auditor's responsibilities in a group audit engagement by stating that;

- (i) The auditor's responsibilities are to plan and perform the group audit to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the financial information of the entities or business units within the group as a basis for forming an opinion on the group financial statements;
- (ii) The auditor is responsible for the direction, supervision and review of the audit work performed for purposes of the group audit; and
- (iii) The auditor remains solely responsible for the auditor's opinion.

estimates and related disclosures made by [management and Those Charged with Governance].

- Conclude on the appropriateness of [Those Charged with Governance's] use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the [Entity's] ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the [Entity] to cease to continue as a going concern.
- [Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.]<sup>53</sup>

We communicate with [management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance] regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm<sup>54</sup>]

[Auditor Address: name the location in the jurisdiction where the auditor practices]

[Date: No earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor's opinion on the financial statements, including evidence that (i) All the statements and disclosures that comprise the financial statements have been prepared; and (ii) Those with the recognised authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for those financial statements.]

9.4.2. When the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor shall refer to "the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements" or "the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view," as appropriate in the circumstances, in the description of responsibilities for the financial statements in the auditor's report.

9.4.3. The auditor shall not refer to the work of an auditor's expert in an auditor's report containing an unmodified opinion unless required by law or regulation to do so. If such reference is required by law or regulation, the auditor shall indicate in the auditor's report that the reference does not reduce the auditor's responsibility for the auditor's opinion.

## 9.5. Modifications to the Opinion

*Tables A to C below set out the requirements for which a modified opinion is to be used in different situations, and the form and content of a modified opinion.*

9.5.1. The auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor's report according to Tables A–C below when:

- (a) The auditor concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or
- (b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

<sup>53</sup> Relevant when the financial statements are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework.

<sup>54</sup> [NZ] Law or regulation may require that the auditors' report include the name of the engagement partner responsible for audits. The auditor may be required by law or regulation, or may decide, to include additional information beyond the engagement partner's name in the auditor's report to further identify the engagement partner, for example, the engagement partner's professional license number that is relevant to where the auditor practices.

9.5.2. When the auditor modifies the audit opinion, the auditor shall:

- (a) Amend the heading “Basis for Opinion” to “Basis for Qualified Opinion,” “Basis for Adverse Opinion,” or “Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion” as set out in Tables A–C; and
- (b) Within the basis for opinion section, include a description of the matter giving rise to the modification.

*Table A below specifies how the auditor’s professional judgement about the nature of the matter giving rise to the modification, and the pervasiveness of its effects or possible effects on the financial statements, affects the type of opinion to be expressed.*

<b>TABLE A</b>  <b>Nature of Matter Giving Rise to the Modification</b>	<b>Auditor’s Professional Judgement about the Pervasiveness of the Effects or Possible Effects on the Financial Statements</b>	
	<i>Material but Not Pervasive</i>	<i>Material and Pervasive</i>
<i>Financial statements are materially misstated</i>	Qualified opinion	Adverse opinion
<i>Inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence</i>	Qualified opinion	Disclaimer of opinion

*Table B below specifies the modification to be made to the opinion for each type of opinion in Table A.*

<b>TABLE B</b> <b>Form of opinion</b>	<b>Fair Presentation Framework</b>	<b>Compliance Framework</b>
<p><b>9.5.3. Qualified opinion</b></p> <p>Auditor’s Report – Heading for opinion: “Qualified Opinion”</p> <p>Auditor’s Report – Heading for Basis for Opinion: “Basis for Qualified Opinion”</p>	<p>“In our opinion, except for the [effects or possible effects]<sup>55</sup> of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section, the accompanying financial statements [present fairly, in all material respects / [give a true and fair view of] [...] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]”</p>	<p>“...except for the [effects or possible effects] of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section, the accompanying financial statements have been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]”</p>
<p><b>9.5.4. Adverse opinion</b></p> <p>Auditor’s Report – Heading for opinion: “Adverse Opinion”</p>	<p>“...the accompanying financial statements do not [present fairly /give a true and fair view of] [...] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]”</p>	<p>“...the accompanying financial statements have not been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]”</p>

<sup>55</sup> Matters reflected in square brackets (e.g., [ ]) are to be tailored accordingly

Auditor's Report – Heading for Basis for Opinion: “Basis for Adverse Opinion”		
<b>9.5.5. Disclaimer of opinion</b> Auditor's Report – Heading for opinion: “Disclaimer of Opinion” Auditor's Report – Heading for Basis for Opinion: “Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion”	<p>“We were engaged to audit the financial statements of...”</p> <p>“We do not express an opinion on the accompanying financial statements.</p> <p>Because of the significance of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section, we have not been able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the financial statements.”</p>	

*Table C below sets out specific circumstances when the auditor's opinion is to be modified, and the types of opinions expressed in those circumstances based on the nature of the matter giving rise to the modification (see Table A). Table C is not an exhaustive list of all circumstances when the auditor's opinion is to be modified.*

<b>TABLE C</b>				
<b>Specific Circumstances When the Auditor's Opinion is to be Modified</b>	<b>Para Ref</b>	<b>Qualified</b>	<b>Adverse</b>	<b>Disclaimer</b>
<i>Opening Balances</i>				
9.5.6. The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the opening balances.	4.5.4.	✓		✓
9.5.7. The auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that the opening balances contain a misstatement that materially affects the current period's financial statements, and the effect of the misstatement is not appropriately accounted for or not adequately presented or disclosed.	4.5.5.	✓	✓	
9.5.8. The auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that the current period's accounting policies are not consistently applied in relation to opening balances in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework or a change in accounting policies is not appropriately accounted for or adequately	4.5.6.	✓	✓	

<b>TABLE C</b>				
<b>Specific Circumstances When the Auditor's Opinion is to be Modified</b>	<b>Para Ref</b>	<b>Qualified</b>	<b>Adverse</b>	<b>Disclaimer</b>
presented or disclosed, in accordance with the financial reporting framework.				
9.5.9. The predecessor auditor's opinion regarding the prior period's financial statements included a modification that remains relevant and material to the current period's financial statements.	4.5.3.	✓	✓	✓
<i>Non-Compliance with Laws and Regulations</i>				
9.5.10. Sufficient information about suspected non-compliance cannot be obtained.	7.4.26.	✓		✓
9.5.11. The auditor concludes that the identified or suspected non-compliance has a material effect on the financial statements and has not been adequately reflected in the financial statements.	7.4.27.	✓	✓	
9.5.12. The auditor is precluded by management or those charged with governance from obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence to evaluate whether non-compliance that may be material to the financial statements has, or is likely to have, occurred.	7.4.27.	✓		✓
9.5.13. The auditor is unable to determine whether non-compliance has occurred because of limitations imposed by the circumstances rather than by management or those charged with governance.	7.4.27.	✓		✓
<i>External Confirmations</i>				
9.5.14. The auditor concludes that management's refusal to allow the auditor to send a confirmation request is unreasonable, or the auditor is unable to obtain relevant and reliable	7.3.24.	✓		✓

<b>TABLE C</b>				
<b>Specific Circumstances When the Auditor's Opinion is to be Modified</b>	<b>Para Ref</b>	<b>Qualified</b>	<b>Adverse</b>	<b>Disclaimer</b>
audit evidence from alternative audit procedures.				
<i>Inventory</i>				
9.5.15. The auditor cannot perform alternative audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the existence and condition of inventory.	7.4.21.	✓		✓
<i>Litigation and Claims</i>				
9.5.16. Management refuses to give the auditor permission to communicate or meet with the entity's external legal counsel, or the entity's external legal counsel refuses to respond appropriately to the letter of enquiry, or is prohibited from responding; and the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative audit procedures.	7.4.25.	✓		✓
<i>Going Concern</i>				
9.5.17. The financial statements have been prepared using the going concern basis of accounting but, in the auditor's professional judgement, management's use of the going concern basis of accounting in the preparation of the financial statements is inappropriate.	7.4.1. 8.5.7.		✓	
9.5.18. Adequate disclosures are not made about a material uncertainty in the financial statements.  9.5.19. In this circumstance, the basis for qualified (or adverse) opinion section shall state that "a material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and that the financial statements do not adequately disclose this matter."	7.4.4. 8.5.8.	✓	✓	



<b>TABLE C</b> <b>Specific Circumstances When the Auditor's Opinion is to be Modified</b>	<b>Para Ref</b>	<b>Qualified</b>	<b>Adverse</b>	<b>Disclaimer</b>
9.5.20. [Amended by the NZAuASB] NZ9.5.20. When evaluating management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the period is less than twelve months from the date of the auditor's current report, and management does not make or extend its assessment, leading to the auditor being unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.	7.4.2.	✓		✓
<i>Subsequent Events</i>				
9.5.21. Facts become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report but before the date the financial statements are issued, and management does not amend the financial statements in circumstances where the auditor believes they need to be amended.	8.4.6.	✓	✓	✓
<i>Written Representations</i>				
9.5.22. The auditor concludes that the written representations required by this standard are not reliable.	8.6.5.	✓		✓
9.5.23. Management does not provide one or more of the requested written representations.	8.6.6.	✓		✓
9.5.24. The auditor concludes that there is sufficient doubt about the integrity of management such that the written representations required by 8.6.1.(a)–(c) are not reliable.	8.6.7.			✓
9.5.25. When management does not provide the written representations required by paragraphs 8.6.1.(a)–(c).	8.6.7.			✓

TABLE C Specific Circumstances When the Auditor's Opinion is to be Modified	Para Ref	Qualified	Adverse	Disclaimer
<i>Corresponding Figures</i>				
<p>9.5.26. Corresponding figures are presented, the auditor's report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion, a disclaimer of opinion, or an adverse opinion and the matter which gave rise to the modification is unresolved.</p> <p>The Basis for Modification paragraph shall either: (a) refer to both the current period's figures and the corresponding figures in the description of the matter giving rise to the modification when the effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period's figures are material,; or (b) in other cases, explain that the audit opinion has been modified because of the effects or possible effects of the unresolved matter on the comparability of the current period's figures and the corresponding figures.</p>	9.7.6.	✓	✓	✓
<i>Other Items</i>				
9.5.27. The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.	8.5.6.	✓		✓
9.5.28. The financial statements prepared in accordance with the requirements of a fair presentation framework do not achieve fair presentation.	9.3.2.		✓	
9.5.29. The financial statements are prepared in accordance with a compliance framework and, in extremely rare circumstances, the auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that such financial statements are misleading.	9.3.3.	✓	✓	✓

*Other Matters Relating to Modifications*

9.5.30. If the auditor makes reference to the work of an auditor's expert in the auditor's report because such reference is relevant to an understanding of a modification to the auditor's opinion, the auditor shall indicate in the auditor's report that such reference does not reduce the auditor's responsibility for that opinion.

9.5.31. If there is a material misstatement of the financial statements that relates to:

- (a) Specific amounts in the financial statements (including quantitative disclosures), the auditor shall include in the Basis for Opinion section a description and quantification of the financial effects of the misstatement, unless impracticable. If it is not practicable to quantify the financial effects, the auditor shall so state in this section.
- (b) Qualitative disclosures, the auditor shall include in the Basis for Opinion section an explanation of how the disclosures are misstated.
- (c) The non-disclosure in the financial statements of information required to be disclosed, the auditor shall:
  - (i) Discuss the non-disclosure with those charged with governance;
  - (ii) Describe in the Basis for Opinion section the nature of the omitted information; and
  - (iii) Unless prohibited by law or regulation, include the omitted disclosures, provided it is practicable to do so and the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the omitted information.

9.5.32. If the modification results from an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall include in the Basis for Opinion section the reasons for that inability.

9.5.33. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the auditor shall amend the Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of the report under paragraph 9.4.1. to include only the following:

- (a) A statement that the auditor's responsibility is to conduct an audit of the entity's financial statements in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE and to issue an auditor's report;
- (b) A statement that because of the matter(s) described in the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section, the auditor was not able to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide a basis for an audit opinion on the financial statements; and
- (c) A statement that the auditor is independent of the entity in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit, and has fulfilled the auditor's other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.

(NZ d) In New Zealand, the statement required by paragraph 9.5.33.(c) shall refer to Professional and Ethical Standard 1 *International Code of Ethics for Assurance Practitioners (including International Independence Standards) (New Zealand)* issued by the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board.

9.5.34. If the auditor has expressed an adverse opinion or disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall describe in the Basis for Opinion section the reasons for any other matters of which the auditor is aware that would have required a modification to the opinion, and the effects thereof.

**9.6. Other Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report**

*Emphasis of Matter paragraphs and Other Matter paragraphs in the auditor's report are used when the auditor considers it necessary to:*

- *Draw users' attention to a matter or matters presented or disclosed in the financial statements that are of such importance that they are fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements (Emphasis of Matter); or*
- *Draw users' attention to any matter or matters other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that are relevant to users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities or the auditor's report (Other Matter).*

### *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs*

9.6.1. If the auditor considers it necessary to draw users' attention to a matter presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's professional judgement, is of such importance that it is fundamental to the users' understanding of the financial statements, and the auditor would not be required to modify the opinion as a result of that matter, the auditor shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor's report indicating that the auditor's report is not modified in respect of the matter emphasised.

*Examples of where Emphasis of Matter paragraphs may be needed include:*

- *When a financial reporting framework prescribed by law or regulation would be unacceptable but for the fact that it is prescribed by law or regulation.*
- *When facts become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report and the auditor provides a new or amended auditor's report (i.e., subsequent events).*

*The inclusion of an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor's report does not affect the auditor's opinion. An Emphasis of Matter paragraph is not a substitute for:*

- *A modified opinion when required by the circumstances of a specific audit engagement;*
- *Disclosures in the financial statements that the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to make, or that are otherwise necessary to achieve fair presentation; or*
- *Reporting when a material uncertainty exists relating to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.*

### *Other Matter Paragraphs*

*The content of an Other Matter paragraph reflects clearly that such other matter is not required to be presented and disclosed in the financial statements. An Other Matter paragraph does not include information that the auditor is prohibited from providing by law, regulation or other professional standards, for example, ethical standards for the confidentiality of information. An Other Matter paragraph also does not include information that is required to be provided by management.*

9.6.2. If the auditor considers it necessary to communicate a matter other than those that are presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's professional judgement, is relevant to the users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities or the auditor's report the auditor shall include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor's report provided this is not prohibited by law or regulation.

*Content of Other Paragraphs in the Audit Report*

9.6.3. When the auditor includes an Emphasis of Matter, Other Matter paragraph or a material uncertainty related to going concern in the auditor's report, the auditor shall include the paragraph or section according to Table D below:

<b>TABLE D</b> <b>Paragraph or Section</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Heading shall include</b>	<b>Content shall include</b>
9.6.4. Emphasis of Matter paragraph	A separate section of the auditor's report	Appropriate heading that includes "Emphasis of Matter"	A clear reference to the matter being emphasised and to where relevant disclosures that fully describe the matter can be found in the financial statements. A reference only to information presented or disclosed in the financial statements. An indication that the auditor's opinion is not modified in respect of the matter emphasised.
9.6.5. Other Matter paragraph	A separate section of the auditor's report	Appropriate heading that includes "Other Matter"	As appropriate in the circumstances.
9.6.6. Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern paragraph	A separate section of the auditor's report	"Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern"	Draw attention to the note in the financial statements that discloses the matters related to the material uncertainty. State that these events or conditions indicate that a material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern and that the auditor's opinion is not modified in respect of the matter.

9.6.7. When facts become known to the auditor after the financial statements have been issued and if management amends the financial statements, the auditor shall include in the new or amended auditor's report an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or Other Matter paragraph drawing users' attention to the reason for the amendment and referring to the earlier report provided by the auditor.

## **9.7. Comparative Information – Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements**

*[NZ] In New Zealand, the auditor's opinion on financial statements prepared under New Zealand generally accepted accounting practice refers to financial statements for the current period, which include corresponding figures, and not to comparative financial statements. Consequently, paragraphs 9.7.1., 9.7.2., 9.7.4., 9.7.7. and 9.7.8. have no application.*

9.7.1. The auditor shall determine whether the financial statements include the comparative information required by the applicable financial reporting framework and whether such information is appropriately classified. In doing so, the auditor shall evaluate whether:

- (a) The amounts and disclosures in the prior period agree with comparative information or have been restated; and

- (b) The accounting policies reflected in the comparative information are consistent with those applied in the current period or, where changes occurred, have been properly accounted for and adequately presented or disclosed.
- 9.7.2. If the auditor becomes aware of a possible material misstatement in the comparative information while performing the current period audit, the auditor shall perform such additional audit procedures as are necessary in the circumstances to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to determine whether a material misstatement exists. If the prior period financial statements are amended, the auditor shall determine that the comparative information agrees with the amended financial statements.
- 9.7.3. If the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor and the auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from referring to the predecessor auditor's report on the corresponding figures and decides to do so, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor's report:
- (a) That the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor;
  - (b) The type of opinion expressed by the predecessor auditor and, if the opinion was modified, the reasons therefore; and
  - (c) The date of that report.
- 9.7.4. If the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor and are presented as comparative financial statements, in addition to expressing an opinion on the current period's financial statements, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph:
- (a) That the financial statements of the prior period were audited by a predecessor auditor;
  - (b) The type of opinion expressed by the predecessor auditor and, if the opinion was modified, the reasons therefore; and
  - (c) The date of that report, unless the predecessor auditor's report on the prior period's financial statements is reissued with the financial statements.
- 9.7.5. If the prior period financial statements were not audited, the auditor shall state in an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor's report that the corresponding figures or comparative financial statements are unaudited. Such a statement does not, however, relieve the auditor of the requirement to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the opening balances do not contain misstatements that materially affect the current period's financial statements.

#### *Corresponding Figures*

- 9.7.6. When corresponding figures are presented, the auditor's opinion shall not refer to the corresponding figures except in accordance with paragraph 9.7.5. or in the following circumstances:
- (a) If the auditor's report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion, a disclaimer of opinion, or an adverse opinion and the matter which gave rise to the modification is unresolved, the auditor shall modify the auditor's opinion on the current period's financial statements.<sup>56</sup>
  - (b) If the auditor obtains audit evidence that a material misstatement exists in the prior period financial statements on which an unmodified opinion has been previously issued, and the corresponding figures have not been properly restated or appropriate disclosures have not been made, the auditor shall express a qualified opinion or an adverse opinion in the

---

<sup>56</sup> For the effect on the auditor's report see Part 9, paragraph 9.5.26.

auditor's report on the current period financial statements, modified with respect to the corresponding figures included therein.

### *Comparative Financial Statements*

9.7.7. When comparative financial statements are presented, the auditor's opinion shall refer to each period for which financial statements are presented and on which an audit opinion is expressed.

9.7.8. When reporting on prior period financial statements in connection with the current period's audit, if the auditor's opinion on such prior period financial statements differs from the opinion the auditor previously expressed, the auditor shall disclose the substantive reasons for the different opinion in an Other Matter paragraph.

### **9.8. Other Information**

*"Other information" is financial or non-financial information (other than the financial statements and the auditor's report thereon) included in an entity's annual report.*

9.8.1. The auditor shall determine, through discussion with management, which document(s) comprises the annual report, and the entity's planned manner and timing of the issuance of such document(s).

9.8.2. The auditor shall read the other information, and:

- (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial statements; and
- (b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.

9.8.3. As the basis for the considerations in paragraph 9.8.2.(a), the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial statements) with such amounts or other items in the financial statements.

*In evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items, the auditor is not required to compare all amounts or other items in the other information that are intended to be the same as, or summarise, or to provide greater details about, the amounts or other items within the financial statements, with such amounts or other items in the financial statements.*

9.8.4. While reading the other information, the auditor shall also remain alert for indications that the remainder of the other information, which is unrelated to the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, appears to be materially misstated.

9.8.5. If the auditor identifies that a material inconsistency appears to exist (or becomes aware that the other information appears to be materially misstated), the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, if necessary, perform other procedures to conclude whether:

- (a) A material misstatement of the other information exists;
- (b) A material misstatement of the financial statements exists; or
- (c) The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated.

9.8.6. If the auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that a material misstatement of the other information exists, the auditor shall request management to correct the other information. If management:

- (a) Agrees to make the correction, the auditor shall determine that the correction has been made; or

- (b) Refuses to make the correction, the auditor shall communicate the matter with those charged with governance and request that the correction be made. If the correction is still not made, the auditor shall consider the implications for the auditor's report in accordance with Table E below or withdraw from the engagement where this is possible.

9.8.7. If the auditor obtained some, or all of, the other information at the date of the auditor's report, the auditor shall include an Other Information section in the auditor's report in accordance with Table E.

<b>TABLE E</b> <b>Paragraph or Section</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Heading shall include</b>	<b>Content shall include</b>
9.8.8. [Amended by the NZAuASB] NZ9.8.8. Other Information Section	A separate section of the auditor's report	"Other Information" or other appropriate title	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) A statement that those charged with governance is responsible for the other information;</li> <li>(b) An identification of the other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report;</li> <li>(c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;</li> <li>(d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this ISA (NZ) for LCE; and</li> <li>(e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or</li> <li>(ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

9.8.9. Unless required by law or regulation, when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor's report shall not include an Other Information section.

## 9.9. Specific Documentation Requirements

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

9.9.1. The auditor shall document the procedures performed in relation to other information and the final version of the other information.



## **10. Audits of Group Financial Statements**

### *Content of this Part*

Part 10 sets out the special considerations that apply to a group audit. Throughout this Part, “the auditor” should be read as the “group auditor”.

### *Scope of this Part*

All Parts of the ISA (NZ) for LCE apply to a group audit. The requirements and guidance in this Part refer to, or expand on, the application of other Parts of the ISA (NZ) for LCE to a group audit.

### **10.1. Objective**

10.1.1. The objective of the auditor is to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, and plan and perform further audit procedures to appropriately respond to those assessed risks.

### **10.2. Planning Activities**

10.2.1. In applying Part 5, the auditor shall establish, and update as necessary, the scope, timing and direction of the group audit. In doing so, the auditor shall determine:

- (a) The components at which audit work will be performed; and
- (b) The resources needed to perform the group audit engagement.

### *Components*

*The determination of components at which to perform audit work is a matter of professional judgement. Matters that may influence the auditor's determination include, for example:*

- *The nature of events or conditions that may give rise to risks of material misstatement at the assertion level of the group financial statements that are associated with a component, for example, newly formed or acquired entities or business units or entities or business units in which significant changes have taken place.*
- *The disaggregation of significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures in the group financial statements across components, considering the size and nature of assets, liabilities and transactions at the location or business unit relative to the group financial statements.*
- *Whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence is expected to be obtained for all significant classes of transactions, account balances and disclosures in the group financial statements from audit work planned on the financial information of identified components.*
- *The nature and extent of misstatements or control deficiencies identified at a component in prior period audits.*
- *The nature and extent of the commonality of controls across the group and whether, and if so, how, the group centralises activities relevant to financial reporting.*

*Based on the understanding of the group's organisational structure and information system, the auditor may determine that the financial information of certain entities or business units may be considered together for purposes of planning and performing audit procedures. For example, a group may have three legal entities with similar business characteristics, operating in the same geographical location, under the same management, and using a common system of internal*

*control, including the information system. In these circumstances, the auditor may decide to treat these three legal entities as one component.*

#### *Resources*

*Part 3 requires the engagement partner to determine that sufficient and appropriate resources to perform the engagement are assigned or made available to the engagement team in a timely manner. The auditor's determination of the resources needed to perform the group audit are a matter of professional judgement and may include the understanding of:*

- *The group;*
- *The components within the group at which audit work is to be performed, the location of such components and any related jurisdictional factors such as language, culture and regulation; and*
- *Whether to perform work centrally, at components or a combination thereof.*

10.2.2. If, after the acceptance or continuance of the group audit engagement, the engagement partner concludes that sufficient appropriate audit evidence cannot be obtained, the engagement partner shall consider the possible effects on the group audit.

### **10.3. Materiality**

10.3.1. In applying Part 5, when classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures in the group financial statements are disaggregated across components, for purposes of planning and performing audit procedures, the auditor shall determine component performance materiality. To address aggregation risk, such amount shall be lower than group performance materiality.

*The component performance materiality amount may be different for each component. Also, the component performance materiality amount for an individual component need not be an arithmetical portion of the group performance materiality and, consequently, the aggregate of component performance materiality amounts may exceed group performance materiality.*

*The ISA (NZ) for LCE does not require component performance materiality to be determined for each class of transactions, account balance or disclosure for components at which audit procedures are performed. However, if, in the specific circumstances of the group, there is one or more particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the group financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of the group financial statements, Part 5 requires a determination of the materiality level or levels to be applied to those particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures. In these circumstances, the auditor may need to consider whether a component performance materiality lower than the amount may be appropriate for those particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures.*

*The determination of component performance materiality is not a simple mechanical calculation and involves the exercise of professional judgement. Factors the auditor may consider in setting component performance materiality include the following:*

- *The extent of disaggregation of the financial information across components (e.g., as the extent of disaggregation across components increases, a lower component performance materiality ordinarily would be appropriate to address aggregation risk). The relative significance of the component to the group may affect the extent of disaggregation (e.g., if a single component represents a large portion of the group, there likely may be less disaggregation across components).*

- *Expectations about the nature, frequency, and magnitude of misstatements in the component financial information, for example the nature and extent of misstatements identified at the component in prior audits.*

*To address aggregation risk, paragraph 10.3.1. requires component performance materiality to be lower than group performance materiality. In some circumstances, however, component performance materiality may be set at an amount closer to group performance materiality because there is less aggregation risk, such as when the financial information for one component represents a substantial portion of the group financial statements.*

#### **10.4. Understanding the Group and Its Environment, the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework and the Group's System of Internal Control**

10.4.1. In applying Part 6, the auditor shall obtain an understanding of:

- (a) The group's organisational structure and its business model, including:
  - (i) The locations in which the group has its operations or activities;
  - (ii) The nature of the group's operations or activities and the extent to which they are similar across the group; and
  - (iii) The extent to which the group's business model integrates the use of IT.
- (b) The applicable financial reporting framework and the consistency of accounting policies and practices across the group.
- (c) The group's system of internal control, including:
  - (i) The consolidation process used by the group and consolidation adjustments;
  - (ii) The nature and extent of commonality of controls;
  - (iii) How the group centralises activities relevant to financial reporting; and
  - (iv) How group management communicates significant matters that support the preparation of the group financial statements to management of entities or business units.

#### **10.5. Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement**

10.5.1. In applying Part 6, based on the understanding obtained in paragraph 10.4.1. the auditor shall identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements, including with respect to the consolidation process.

*In applying Part 6, the auditor is required to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud, and to design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing and extent are responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the assertion level. Information used to identify the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements due to fraud may include the following:*

- *Whether there are particular components that are more susceptible to risks of material misstatement due to fraud.*
- *Whether any fraud risk factors or indicators of management bias exist in the consolidation process.*
- *How those charged with governance of the group monitor group management's processes for identifying and responding to the risks of fraud in the group, and the controls group management has established to mitigate these risks.*

- *Responses of those charged with governance of the group, and group management to the auditor's enquiry about whether they have knowledge of any actual, suspected, or alleged fraud affecting a component or the group.*

## 10.6. Responding to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement

10.6.1. In applying Part 7, the auditor shall determine the components at which to perform further audit procedures, and the nature, timing and extent of the work to be performed at those components.

*Further audit procedures may be designed and performed centrally if the audit evidence to be obtained from performing further audit procedures on one or more significant classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures in the aggregate will respond to the assessed risks of material misstatement, for example, if the accounting records for the revenue transactions of the entire group are maintained centrally.*

*The auditor may determine that the financial information of components can be considered as a single population for the purpose of performing further audit procedures, for example, when transactions are considered to be homogeneous because they share the same characteristics, the related risks of material misstatement are the same, and controls are designed and operating in a consistent way. In such cases, group performance materiality often will be used for purposes of performing these procedures.*

*In other circumstances, procedures to respond to the risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements that are related to the financial information of a component may be more effectively performed at the component level. In responding to the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor may determine the following scope of work to be appropriate at a component:*

- *Design and perform further audit procedures on the entire financial information of the component;*
- *Design and perform further audit procedures on one or more classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures; or*
- *Perform specific further audit procedures.*

### Consolidation Process

10.6.2. The auditor shall design and perform further audit procedures to respond to the assessed risks of material misstatement of the group financial statements arising from the consolidation process. This shall include:

- Evaluating whether all entities and business units have been included in the group financial statements as required by the applicable financial reporting framework;
- Evaluating the appropriateness, completeness and accuracy of consolidation adjustments and reclassifications;
- Evaluating whether management's judgements made in the consolidation process give rise to indicators of possible management bias; and
- Responding to assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud arising from the consolidation process.

*The consolidation process may require adjustments and reclassifications to amounts reported in the group financial statements that do not pass through the usual IT applications, and may not be subject to the same controls to which other financial information is subject. The auditor's*

*evaluation of the appropriateness, completeness and accuracy of the adjustments and reclassifications may include:*

- *Evaluating whether significant adjustments appropriately reflect the events and transactions underlying them;*
- *Determining whether those entities or business units whose financial information has been included in the group financial statements were appropriately included;*
- *Determining whether significant adjustments have been correctly calculated, processed and authorised by group management and, when applicable, by component management;*
- *Determining whether significant adjustments are properly supported and sufficiently documented; and*
- *Evaluating the reconciliation and elimination of intra-group transactions, unrealized profits, and intra-group account balances.*

## **10.7. Specific Communication Requirements**

10.7.1. The auditor shall communicate the following matters with those charged with governance:

- (a) An overview of the work to be performed at the components of the group.
- (b) Fraud or suspected fraud involving group management, component management, employees who have significant roles in the group's system of internal control, or others when the fraud resulted in a material misstatement of the group financial statements.

## **10.8. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

10.8.1. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation:

- (a) The basis for the auditor's determination of components for purposes of planning and performing the group audit;
- (b) The basis for the determination of component performance materiality; and
- (c) Key elements of the understanding of the group's system of internal control.

**[NZ]11. Audit of Service Performance Information***Content of this Part*

Part 11 sets out the considerations that apply when auditing service performance information, concurrently with the financial statements<sup>57</sup>.

*Scope of this Part*

All parts of the ISA (NZ) for LCE apply when auditing an LCE that reports service performance information and that service performance information is subject to audit<sup>58</sup>. The requirements and guidance in this Part refer to, or expand on, the application of other Parts of the ISA (NZ) for LCE<sup>59</sup> to the audit of service performance information.

[TBC]Related guidance on the audit of service performance information and examples of modified opinions, can be found in the *Service Performance Information Supplemental Guide*.

**11.1. Objectives**

11.1.1. The objectives of the auditor are:

- (a) to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the service performance information is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and
- (b) to issue an auditor's report that includes their opinion.

*The auditor may achieve the objectives of this Part by considering the following two steps:*

(a) *Assess whether the following aspects of the service performance information are appropriate and meaningful in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework:*

- *The elements/aspects of service performance that the entity has selected to report on.*
- *The performance measures and/or descriptions the entity has used to report on what it has done in relation to those elements/aspects of service performance during the reporting period.*
- *The measurement basis or evaluation method used to measure or evaluate the performance measure and/or description.*

(b) *Assess whether the reported service performance information fairly reflects the actual service performance and is not materially misstated.*

<sup>57</sup> When the service performance information is not within the scope of the audit engagement, the auditor's responsibility for the service performance information is limited to following the requirements in Part 9.8.

<sup>58</sup> Some entities are required by the applicable financial reporting framework to prepare entity information, including Reporting Requirements for Tier 3 Not-for-Profit Entities, Reporting Requirements for Tier 3 Public Sector Entities, Reporting Requirements for Tier 4 Not-for-Profit Entities, Reporting Requirements for Tier 4 Public Sector Entities. For Tier 3 registered charities and incorporated societies, which have a statutory audit requirement (under the Charities Act 2005 or Incorporated Societies Act 2022), all information required to be prepared by the applicable reporting standard is required to be audited, including the entity information. When the entity information is not within scope of the audit engagement, the auditor's responsibility for the entity information is limited to following the requirements in Part 11.18. and Part 9.8.

<sup>59</sup> In accordance with paragraph NZP.16A, the use of the term "financial statements" in the ISA (NZ) for LCE also refers to "service performance information" and where relevant "entity information" (i.e., where an auditor is applying Part 11).



*The auditor may benefit from early engagement with the entity to understand the entity's service performance reporting process, where it intends to report its service performance information and address any challenges that may arise to evaluate whether the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful as required by the ISA (NZ) for LCE.*

## 11.2. Terms of the Audit Engagement

11.2.1. In applying Part 4, the auditor shall agree the terms of the audit engagement with those charged with governance, with respect to the audit of service performance information.

*Appendix 2A sets out an illustrative engagement letter including service performance information.*

## 11.3. Planning Activities

11.3.1. In applying Part 5, the auditor shall set the scope, timing and direction of the audit to concurrently cover the service performance information and the financial statements. In doing so, the auditor shall:

- (a) Consider the factors that, in the auditor's professional judgement, are significant in directing the engagement team's efforts in respect of the audit of service performance information;
- (b) Determine the timing of when to evaluate whether the entity's service performance information is appropriate and meaningful; and
- (c) Determine the resources needed to perform the audit engagement in respect of the audit of the service performance information.

### *Resources*

*Part 3 requires the engagement partner to determine that sufficient and appropriate resources to perform the engagement are assigned or made available to the engagement team in a timely manner. The auditor's determination of the resources needed to perform the audit of service performance information are a matter of professional judgement.*

11.3.2. The auditor shall update and change the scope, timing and direction as necessary during the audit.

11.3.3. The auditor shall discuss the following matters with those charged with governance:

- (a) What elements/aspects of service performance and performance measures and/or descriptions the entity intends to report as part of its service performance information;
- (b) What measurement bases or evaluation methods the entity intends to use to measure or evaluate its performance.

11.3.4. Any concerns identified arising from the discussions in 11.3.3. shall then be communicated to those charged with governance as soon as practicable.

*The discussion at paragraph 11.3.3. may assist the auditor in their assessment of whether the service performance information the entity intends to report is appropriate and meaningful.*

### *Using the Work of Management's Expert*

11.3.5. The auditor shall determine whether information to be used as audit evidence has been prepared using the work of a management's expert.

*The requirements for when the auditor uses the work of a management's expert are set out in paragraphs 5.2.9. and 7.4.29.*

*Determining Whether to Use the Work of an Auditor's Expert*

11.3.6. If expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the service performance information, the auditor shall determine whether to use the work of an auditor's expert.

*Paragraphs 5.2.10. and 7.4.30. set out the auditor's responsibilities when using the work of an auditor's expert.*

**11.4. Understanding Relevant Aspects of the Entity and the Service Performance Information**

*In addition to Part 6.3, the auditor is required to understand the following relevant aspects of the entity for this Part, including the entity and its environment, laws and regulations, the service performance information reported, and the system of internal controls over the preparation of service performance information.*

*Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*

11.4.1. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of:

- (a) The entity's purpose or objective and its activities or services the entity performs.
- (b) The entity's primary stakeholders and users of the service performance information.
- (c) What is considered important to those stakeholders and users identified in (b), and what they may use the service performance information for.

*Understanding Laws and Regulations*

11.4.2. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of the legal and regulatory framework that specify the form, content, preparation, publication, and audit of service performance information; and how the entity is complying with that framework.

*The scope of what service performance information the entity reports may be embodied in law or regulation specific to the entity, industry or sector in which the entity operates and, in particular, with laws and regulations that specify the form and content of service performance information, or which describe the entity's accountability.*

*The nature of the performance report may be specified in applicable legislation, which may indirectly determine the nature of the performance information to be reported.*

*The provisions of those laws and regulations may require the entity to present particular service performance information which may be over and above any requirements to comply with the applicable financial reporting framework. As the reporting is required by law and regulation the auditor is not required to assess whether the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful.*

*Understanding the Service Performance Information Reported*

11.4.3. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of:

- (a) The applicable financial reporting framework relevant to the service performance information.
- (b) The process, including the rationale and logic, to determine what elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods and judgements to report.



- (c) The process to identify, and the level of engagement with, the intended users of the service performance information.
- (d) The measurement bases or evaluation methods used by the entity to assess the performance measures and/or descriptions and how these are made available to intended users.
- (e) Changes to the elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and the measurement bases or evaluation methods used to report its service performance compared to prior year, planned, forecast or prospective information.
- (f) Where the entity intends to report its service performance information.

*In the early stages of reporting service performance information, the entity may not have developed an appropriate process, supported by internal controls, to identify its service performance information, or service performance information may be less accurate or complete. The entity may therefore be unable to include certain aspects of its service performance in its service performance information. The auditor exercises professional judgement to conclude on the impact of such omissions (including those for which the entity has provided reasons or explanations). This is particularly relevant since entities will be at varying stages of maturity in respect of preparing service performance information.*

#### *Understanding the Entity's System of Internal Control*

11.4.4. The auditor shall obtain an understanding of the control environment relevant to the preparation of the service performance information.

*The auditor applies paragraph 6.3.14 to determine whether deficiencies have been identified in the entity's system of internal control.*

### **11.5. Applicable Financial Reporting Framework**

11.5.1. The auditor shall evaluate whether the service performance information reported or intended to be reported is in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

*Principles and requirements for the reporting of service performance information are specified within the applicable financial reporting framework as follows:*

- (a) *For tier 1 and tier 2 public benefit entities, PBE FRS 48 Service Performance Reporting*
- (b) *For tier 3 public benefit entities:*
  - *Reporting Requirements for Tier 3 Not-for-Profit Entities*
  - *Reporting Requirements for Tier 3 Public Sector Entities*
- (c) *For tier 4 public benefit entities:*
  - *Reporting Requirements for Tier 4 Not-for-Profit Entities*
  - *Reporting Requirements for Tier 4 Public Sector Entities.*

#### *Appropriate and Meaningful*

11.5.2. The auditor shall evaluate whether the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful including whether:

- (a) It fairly reflects the auditor's understanding of the entity.
- (b) It is likely to meet the needs of the intended users to enable an informed assessment of the entity's service performance.

- (c) It relates to an element/aspect of service performance that significantly contributes to the entity's core purpose, functions or objectives.
- (d) There is likely to be sufficient appropriate evidence to support the performance measure and/or description.
- (e) It is capable of measurement or evaluation in a consistent manner from period to period.
- (f) It is presented in a way that is easy to follow, concise, logical and aggregated where appropriate so that it will enable a user to identify the main points of the entity's service performance in that year.

*It is important to engage with the entity as early as possible to understand whether the elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods the entity intends to report are appropriate and meaningful.*

*When evaluating whether the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful, the auditor assesses how well the entity has balanced the qualitative characteristics and pervasive constraints when selecting its elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions, and measurement bases and evaluation methods.*

#### *Laws and Regulations*

11.5.3. The auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the entity has complied with laws and regulations that have a direct material effect on the reporting of service performance information.

### **11.6. Materiality**

11.6.1. The auditor shall:

- (a) Using the understanding gained in part 11.4, determine the significant elements/aspects of service performance.
- (b) Determine materiality considerations and/or materiality for service performance information

*The auditor's understanding of the entity is important in determining what are the significant elements/aspects of the entity's service performance which are important to users of the service performance information.*

*Understanding what elements/aspects of service performance are significant to users may assist the auditor in focusing their audit efforts and applying professional judgement when considering any misstatements identified.*

*The auditor's materiality considerations and determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgement. The evaluation required by paragraph 11.5.2. may assist the auditor to determine materiality considerations and/or materiality.*

*The auditor's determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgement, and is affected by the auditor's perception of the information needs of users of the service performance information.*

*The auditor's determination of materiality considerations and/or materiality provides a basis for:*

- *Determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures to identify and assess risks of material misstatement;*
- *Identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement;*
- *Determining the nature, timing and extent of further audit procedures; and*

- *The auditor's tolerance for misstatement in relation to material service performance measures and/or descriptions.*

*The benchmark for materiality will likely differ from the financial statements. Materiality may be expressed in terms of the appropriate unit of account for each significant element/aspect of service performance or performance measure and/or description reported. The auditor is unlikely to be able to set an overall materiality because there is unlikely to be a common unit of account.*

*The materiality considerations determine the auditor's tolerance for misstatement in relation to material performance measures and/or descriptions. Material misstatements may occur in both qualitative and quantitative service performance information. The auditor may need to exercise professional judgement beyond the traditional approach of applying a % to a chosen benchmark. In some instances, there may be no tolerance for error in some performance measures and/or descriptions.*

11.6.2. The auditor shall apply materiality to assess whether:

- (a) The significant elements/aspects of service performance and related material performance measures and/or descriptions are appropriate and meaningful; and
- (b) The service performance information contains individual or collective misstatements, that based on the auditor's judgement, are likely to influence the decisions of the intended users based on the information.

*If the auditor's assessment required by paragraph 11.6.2.(a) is that the significant elements/aspects of service performance and related material performance measures and/or descriptions are not appropriate and meaningful, it is a matter of professional judgement as to whether that gives rise to a material misstatement.*

*The auditor may firstly consider which elements/aspects of service performance are important to intended users. Having identified those, the auditor may then consider what are the material performance measures and/or descriptions that measure performance in those elements/aspects of service performance. A tolerance for misstatement is then applied by the auditor to material service performance measures and/or descriptions.*

*An individual misstatement, impacting a single significant element/aspect of service performance, performance measure and/or description, may be material.*

*A number of misstatements, when observed collectively across the service performance information, may also be material if they amount to a misleading portrayal of the entity's service performance information. Even though taken individually, each service performance measure and/or description may not be materially misstated, the auditor needs to consider whether the service performance information as a whole is materially misstated.*

*It is unlikely that the auditor will be able to aggregate misstatements numerically. However, this does not remove the need for the auditor to form a conclusion as to whether uncorrected misstatements are material individually or collectively.*

11.6.3. If the auditor becomes aware of information during the audit that would have caused the auditor to have determined a different materiality initially, the auditor shall revise the materiality considerations and/or materiality for the service performance information.

## **11.7. Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement**

11.7.1. In applying part 6.4. and based on the understanding obtained in part 11.4., the auditor shall identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, of the service performance information:

- (a) At the service performance information level. In doing so, the auditor shall determine whether they affect risks at the assertion level and consider the nature and extent of the pervasive effect of identified risks on the service performance information; and
- (b) At the assertion level for performance measures, descriptions or disclosures. In doing so, the auditor shall:
  - (i) Determine the relevant assertions and related significant performance measures, descriptions or disclosures; and
  - (ii) Assess inherent risk for identified risks of material misstatement at the assertion level by assessing the likelihood and magnitude of misstatement.

#### *Service Performance Information Level Risks*

*Risks of material misstatement at the service performance information level refer to risks that relate pervasively to the service performance information as a whole, and potentially affect many assertions. Risks of this nature are not necessarily risks related to specific assertions (e.g., risk of management bias in the selection of service performance information or in the use of language that misleads).*

#### *Assertion Level Risks*

*In identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement, the auditor uses assertions to consider the different types of potential misstatements that may occur. Appendix 5 sets out assertions that may be used by the auditor in considering different types of misstatements at the assertion level.*

#### *Assessing Inherent Risk*

*Due to the variation in aggregation, measurement, and presentation of service performance information, the risk assessment is conducted at a meaningful level to reflect the inherent risk of the particular measure.*

### **Significant Risks**

*In addition to the requirements regarding significant risks in Part 6.4., specific matters relevant to this Part are described below.*

11.7.2. The auditor shall determine whether any of the assessed risks of material misstatement of the service performance information are, in the auditor's professional judgement, a significant risk.

*Risks of material misstatement that may be assessed as having higher inherent risk, and may therefore be determined to be a significant risk, may arise from matters such as the following:*

- *Performance measures that use a measurement basis or evaluation method that may be subject to differing interpretations.*
- *Performance measures that involve complexity in data collection and processing.*
- *Performance measures that use a measurement basis or evaluation method that involves complex calculations.*
- *Changes in the entity's business that involve changes in service performance.*

*Paragraph 11.20.1. includes the specific communications requirements in relation to significant risks.*

### **11.8. Audit Procedures Responsive to the Assessed Risks of Material Misstatement**

11.8.1. The auditor shall design and implement overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement at the service performance information level, whether due to fraud or error.

*The auditor's overall responses at the service performance information level, for example, making general changes to the nature, timing or extent of audit procedures, or adjustments to resources assigned or using experts, are based on those risks that relate pervasively to the service performance information. These may include, for example, risks arising from industry, regulatory and other external factors.*

11.8.2. In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the service performance level, the auditor shall:

- (a) Evaluate whether the selection of significant elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods by the entity, particularly those related to subjective measurements, may be indicative of fraudulent reporting of service performance information resulting from management's effort to mislead in the reporting of service performance information; and
- (b) Incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection of the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures.

*Incorporating an element of unpredictability may be achieved by, for example:*

- *Performing substantive procedures on selected elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods not otherwise tested due to their materiality or risk.*
- *Adjusting the timing of audit procedures from that otherwise expected.*
- *Using different sampling methods.*

Considerations When There Are Members of the Engagement Team Other Than the Engagement Partner

11.8.3. In determining overall responses to address the assessed risks of material misstatement due to fraud at the service performance information level, the auditor shall assign and supervise personnel taking account of the knowledge, skill, and ability of the individuals to be given significant engagement responsibilities and the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud for the engagement over the audit of service performance information.

11.8.4. The auditor shall design and perform further audit procedures whose nature, timing and extent are based on, and responsive to, assessed risks, whether due to fraud or error, at the assertion level.

*Further audit procedures comprise tests of controls and substantive procedures. The auditor may choose to perform tests of controls or they may be required in specific circumstances (see paragraph 11.8.2.(d)). Substantive procedures include tests of details and substantive analytical procedures.*

*Further audit procedures are responsive to the assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, and provide a clear linkage between the auditor's further procedures and the risk assessment. If the assessed risks of material misstatement are due to fraud risks at the assertion level, the nature, timing and extent of audit procedures may need to be changed to obtain audit evidence that is more relevant and reliable or to obtain additional corroborative information.*

*The auditor need not design and perform further audit procedures where the assessment of the risk of material misstatement is below the acceptably low level. However, as required by*

*paragraph 11.8.6. irrespective of the assessed risk, the auditor shall perform substantive procedures for all material service performance information.*

11.8.5. In designing the further audit procedures, the auditor shall:

- (a) Consider the reasons for the assessment given to the risk of material misstatement at the assertion level for each significant performance measure, description or disclosure, including:
  - (i) The likelihood and magnitude of misstatement due to the characteristics of the significant performance measure, description or disclosure (that is, the inherent risk); and
  - (ii) Whether the risk assessment takes account of controls that address the risk of material misstatements (that is, the control risk), thereby requiring the auditor to obtain audit evidence to determine whether the controls are operating effectively (where the auditor plans to test the operating effectiveness of controls in determining the nature, timing and extent of substantive procedures);
- (b) Obtain more persuasive audit evidence the higher the auditor's assessment of risk;
- (c) In designing and performing tests of controls, obtain more persuasive audit evidence the greater the reliance the auditor places on the operating effectiveness of controls; and
- (d) If the auditor intends to test the operating effectiveness of controls or when substantive procedures alone cannot provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the assertion level, design and perform tests of controls, to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence as to the operating effectiveness of such controls.

*Internal control systems related to the preparation of service performance may be less developed or less well 'embedded' into the operations than those related to the preparation of financial information. They may be less traditional to those used for financial information and require greater work effort by the auditor to gain an understanding.*

*In some audits of service performance information, the auditor may not be able to identify many controls, or the extent of documentation prepared by the entity to which they exist or operate may be limited. In such cases, it may be more efficient for the auditor to perform further audit procedures that are primarily substantive procedures.*

11.8.6. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor shall design and perform substantive procedures for all material service performance information.

## **11.9. Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence**

*In addition to the requirements regarding sufficient appropriate audit evidence in Part 2.2. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters relevant to this Part are described below.*

11.9.1. The auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the:

- (a) Elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions, and measurement bases or evaluation methods are appropriate and meaningful; and
- (b) Performance measures and/or descriptions have been prepared in accordance with the entity's measurement bases or evaluation methods; and
- (c) Performance measures and/or descriptions are not materially misstated.

11.9.2. The auditor shall, to the extent practicable, draw on the relationships that exist between the service performance information and the financial statements.



*The auditor may be able to identify relationships between the service performance information and the financial information as a sense check that the financial information and service performance information are reflecting a consistent report of the performance of the entity.*

*The auditor may:*

- *Agree or reconcile amounts reported in the service performance information to any underlying financial and non-financial records.*
- *Agree cross references between the service performance information and the financial statements.*

11.9.3. The auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether any disclosures of judgements related to service performance information are reasonable in the context of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

#### **11.10. Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit of Service Performance Information**

11.10.1. In applying Part 8, the auditor shall consider individually or collectively, all misstatements identified, other than those that are clearly trivial, that are uncorrected by the entity, to evaluate whether the service performance information is free from material misstatement.

*A misstatement of the service performance information may arise in relation to:*

- *The application of the measurement basis or evaluation method;*
- *Inadequate disclosure of judgements made, where applicable; or*
- *Incomplete disclosures that do not include all disclosures required by the applicable financial reporting framework or do not achieve fair presentation of the service performance information*

#### **11.11. Written Representations**

11.11.1. In applying Part 8, the auditor shall obtain written representations regarding service performance information from those charged with governance, who have appropriate knowledge of the matters concerned and responsibility for the service performance information, that they have fulfilled their responsibility for:

- (a) The selection of elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods that present service performance information that is appropriate and meaningful in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- (b) The preparation of service performance information in accordance with the entity's measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- (c) The overall presentation, structure and content of the service performance information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

*Appendix 7A sets out an illustrative representation letter including service performance information.*

#### **11.12. Forming an Opinion on the Service Performance Information**

11.12.1. In applying Part 9, the auditor shall form an opinion on whether the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful and prepared, in all material respects, in accordance

with the entity's measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework<sup>60</sup>.

11.12.2. In order to form that opinion, the auditor shall conclude as to whether the auditor has obtained reasonable assurance about whether the service performance information is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. That conclusion shall take into account:

- (a) Whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained as required by paragraph 11.9.1;
- (b) Whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate; and
- (c) The evaluations required by paragraphs 11.12.3. to 11.12.5.

11.12.3. The auditor shall evaluate whether the service performance information is prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the entity's measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

11.12.4. When the service performance information is prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor shall also evaluate whether the service performance information achieves fair presentation. This evaluation shall include consideration of whether:

- (a) The overall presentation of the service performance information has been undermined by including information that is not relevant or that obscures a proper understanding of the matters disclosed;
- (b) The entity has presented service performance information that is appropriate and meaningful;
- (c) The measurement bases or evaluation methods are available to intended users;
- (d) The overall presentation, structure and content of the service performance information represents the service performance of the entity in a manner that achieves fair presentation; and
- (e) The disclosure of the judgements made in reporting the service performance information, if applicable, is reasonable.

*The auditor's evaluation about whether the service performance information achieves fair presentation, is a matter of professional judgement.*

11.12.5. The auditor shall consider any matters arising during the audit of the financial statements that may affect the auditor's evaluation of the service performance information.

11.12.6. The auditor shall consider the impacts of any matters arising during the audit of the service performance information that may affect the auditor's evaluation of the financial statements.

### **11.13. Form of Opinion**

11.13.1. The auditor's report on the financial statements and the service performance information shall be included in a single report.

11.13.2. The auditor shall express an unmodified opinion, with respect to the service performance information, when the auditor concludes that the service performance information is prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

---

<sup>60</sup> When the service performance information is prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the auditor is not required to evaluate whether the service performance information achieves fair presentation.



*If the financial reporting framework is a fair presentation framework, as is generally the case for general purpose financial reports/ performance reports, the opinion required is on whether the service performance information and financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, or give a true and fair view. If the financial reporting framework is a compliance framework, the opinion required is on whether the service performance information and financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the framework.*

11.13.3. If service performance information prepared in accordance with the requirements of a fair presentation framework do not achieve fair presentation, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, depending on the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework and how the matter is resolved, determine whether to modify the opinion.

11.13.4. If the service performance information is prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the auditor is not required to evaluate whether the service performance information achieves fair presentation. However, if in extremely rare circumstances the auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that such service performance information is misleading, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, depending on how it is resolved, shall determine whether, and how, to communicate it in the auditor's report.

#### **11.14. Auditor's Report**

11.14.1. The auditor shall report in accordance with the specified format and content below unless:

- (a) The auditor's report includes a modified opinion, emphasis of matter paragraph, other matter paragraph, material uncertainty related to going concern, other reporting responsibilities, or a separate section dealing with Other Information, in which case the auditor shall modify the auditor's opinion (according to Part 11.15.) or amend the auditor's report (according to Part 11.18.); or
- (b) The matters in paragraph NZ9.4.1.(a) or NZ9.4.1A. are applicable.

## **INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT**

To [Appropriate Addressee]<sup>61</sup>

### **Opinion**

We have audited<sup>62</sup> the [financial report/ performance report] of [ABC Charity (the Entity), which comprise the financial statements on pages x to xx, and the service performance information on pages x to xx [, and entity information on page x]. The complete set of financial statements comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20XX, and the statement of comprehensive revenue and expense, statement of financial performance, statement of changes in net assets/equity, and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (replace these report names with the appropriate titles)].<sup>63</sup>

In our opinion, the accompanying [financial report/ performance report] presents fairly, in all material respects (or "gives a true and fair view of")<sup>64</sup>:

- [the entity information as at December 31, 20XX;]
- the financial position of the [Entity] as at December 31, 20XX, and its financial performance, and its cash flows for the year then ended; and
- the service performance for the year ended December 31, 20XX in that the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful and prepared in accordance with the [Entity]'s measurement bases or evaluation methods

in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework] issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board.<sup>65</sup>

### **Basis for Opinion**

We conducted our audit in accordance with the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (the ISA (NZ) for LCE). Our responsibilities under the ISA (NZ) for LCE are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the [Financial Report/ Performance Report]* section of our report.<sup>66</sup> We are independent of the [Entity] in accordance with *Professional and Ethical Standard 1 International Code of Ethics for Assurance Practitioners (including International Independence Standards (New Zealand))* issued by the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.<sup>67</sup>

Other than in our capacity as auditor we have no relationship with, or interests in, the [Entity]<sup>68</sup>.

### **Responsibilities of [Those Charged with Governance] for the [Financial Report/ Performance Report]**

[Those Charged with Governance] are responsible on behalf of the [Entity] for:

- The preparation [and fair presentation] of the [financial report/ performance report] in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework],<sup>69</sup>
- The selection of elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods that present service performance information that is appropriate and meaningful in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- The preparation and fair presentation of service performance information in accordance with the [Entity's] measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial

reporting framework;

- The overall presentation, structure and content of the service performance information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework; and
- Such internal control as [Those Charged with Governance] determine is necessary to enable the preparation of a [financial report/ performance report] that is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the [financial report/ performance report], [Those Charged with Governance] are responsible for assessing the [Entity's] ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless [Those Charged with Governance] either intends to liquidate the [Entity] or to cease operations, or have no realistic alternative but to do so.

- 
- <sup>61</sup> Matters reflected in the specified format and content of the auditor's report in square brackets (e.g. [ ]) are to be tailored accordingly.
- <sup>62</sup> When disclaiming an opinion, the statement which indicates that the [financial report/ performance report] have been audited is amended to state that the auditor was engaged to audit the [financial report/ performance report].
- <sup>63</sup> Identify the entity whose [financial report/ performance report] have been audited; identify each financial statement, the statement of service performance, the entity information (if applicable); and its date and period, and refer to the notes and significant accounting policies or use another appropriate description in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- <sup>64</sup> See also paragraph 11.4.2. When the [financial report/ performance report] is prepared in accordance with a compliance framework, the opinion and description of the auditor's responsibilities refer instead to whether the [financial report/ performance report] is prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- <sup>65</sup> Identify the jurisdiction of origin of the financial reporting framework if it is not International Financial Reporting Standards or International Public Sector Accounting Standards as issued by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board. For an entity in New Zealand, that is required to apply the New Zealand Accounting Standards Framework, the reference to the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor's opinion should be to the applicable financial reporting requirements issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board that apply to the tier under which the entity is reporting.
- <sup>66</sup> When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the [financial report/ performance report], this statement is not included in the auditor's report.
- <sup>67</sup> When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion, the statement about whether the audit evidence obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's opinion is amended to include the word "qualified" or "adverse", as appropriate. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the [financial report/ performance report], this statement is not included in the auditor's report.
- <sup>68</sup> If the auditor has any relationship (other than that of auditor) with, or any interests in, the entity, then this statement is amended.
- <sup>69</sup> Where Those Charged with Governance's responsibility is to prepare [financial report/ performance report] that give a true and fair view, this may read: "Those Charged with Governance are responsible for the preparation of a [financial report/ performance report] that gives a true and fair view in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework], and for such ..."

**Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the [Financial Report/ Performance Report]<sup>70 71</sup>**

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the [financial report/ performance report] as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of this [financial report/ performance report].

As part of an audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE, we exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the [financial report/ performance report], whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the [Entity's] internal control.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by [management and Those Charged with Governance].
- Obtain an understanding of the process applied by the [Entity] to select its elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and the measurement bases or evaluation methods.
- Evaluate whether the selection of elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods present an appropriate and meaningful assessment of the [Entity's] service performance in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Evaluate whether the service performance information is prepared in accordance with the [Entity's] measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

<sup>70</sup> The description of the auditor's responsibilities may also be included within an appendix, or refer to a description to the relevant page of the auditors responsibilities on the External Reporting Board's website at <https://www.xrb.govt.nz/standards/assurance-standards/auditors-responsibilities/>. The auditor shall determine that such a description is not inconsistent with this ISA (NZ) for LCE. In such cases, a reference to the location of appendix or description shall be included within the auditor's report, accompanied by "This description forms part of our auditor's report". When the auditor disclaims an opinion, the description of the auditor's responsibilities only includes the matters required by paragraph 9.5.33. – in this context, the reference to financial statements in paragraph 9.5.33. can also be interpreted as service performance information as well.

<sup>71</sup> When Part 10 applies, further describe the auditor's responsibilities in a group audit engagement by stating that:

- (i) The auditor's responsibilities are to plan and perform the group audit to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the financial information of the entities or business units within the group as a basis for forming an opinion on the group [financial report/ performance report];
- (ii) The auditor is responsible for the direction, supervision and review of the audit work performed for purposes of the group audit; and
- (iii) The auditor remains solely responsible for the auditor's opinion.

- Conclude on the appropriateness of [Those Charged with Governance]’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the [Entity’s] ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor’s report to the related disclosures in the [financial report/ performance report] or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor’s report. However, future events or conditions may cause the [Entity] to cease to continue as a going concern.
- [Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the [financial report/ performance report], including the disclosures, and whether the [financial report/ performance report] represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.]<sup>72</sup>

We communicate with [management, and where appropriate, those charged with governance] regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm<sup>73</sup>]

[Auditor Address: name the location in the jurisdiction where the auditor practices]

[Date: No earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor’s opinion on the [financial report/ performance report], including evidence that (i) All the statements and disclosures that comprise the [financial report/ performance report] have been prepared; and (ii) Those with the recognised authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for the [financial report/ performance report].]

11.14.2. In applying paragraph 9.4.2., when the service performance information is prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework, the auditor shall refer to “the preparation and fair presentation of the service performance information” or “the preparation of service performance information that give a true and fair view,” as appropriate in the circumstances, in the description of responsibilities for the service performance information in the auditor’s report.

11.14.3. The auditor shall not refer to the work of an auditor’s expert in an auditor’s report containing an unmodified opinion unless required by law or regulation to do so. If such reference is required by law or regulation, the auditor shall indicate in the auditor’s report that the reference does not reduce the auditor’s responsibility for the auditor’s opinion.

### 11.15. Modifications to the Opinion

*Part 9.5. sets out the requirements for which a modified opinion is to be used in different situations, and the form and content of a modified opinion.*

*The opinion on the financial statements, in many instances, will not be impacted by a modification with respect to the service performance information.*

*Tables A to C in Part 9.5. may also be relevant when the auditor issues a modified opinion over service performance information. In this context, the use of “financial statements” within these Tables also refers to “service performance information”.*

<sup>72</sup> Relevant when the [financial report/ performance report] are prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework.

<sup>73</sup> [NZ] Law or regulation may require that the auditors’ report include the name of the engagement partner responsible for audits. The auditor may be required by law or regulation, or may decide, to include additional information beyond the engagement partner’s name in the auditor’s report to further identify the engagement partner, for example, the engagement partner’s professional license number that is relevant to where the auditor practices.

11.15.1. The auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor's report, with respect to the service performance information when:

- (a) The auditor concludes that either individually or collectively the elements/aspects of service performance, performance measure and/or descriptions, or measurement bases or evaluation methods are materially misstated in that it is not appropriate and meaningful and as such is not in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, or
- (b) The auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that the service performance information is not individually or collectively free from material misstatement, or
- (c) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the service performance information, as a whole, is free from material misstatement.

11.15.2. When the auditor modifies the opinion with respect to the service performance information, the auditor shall consider the effect of the modification on the opinion on the financial statements.

11.15.3. When the auditor modifies the audit opinion with respect to the service performance information only, the audit opinion shall clearly indicate that the opinion on the financial statements is not modified. The auditor shall use the headings "Qualified Opinion on the Service Performance Information", "Adverse Opinion on the Service Performance Information" or "Disclaimer of Opinion on the Service Performance Information" as appropriate. The opinion with respect to the financial statements shall use the heading "Opinion on the Financial Statements".

11.15.4. If the auditor modifies the opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall consider the effect of the modification on the opinion on the service performance information.

#### 11.16. Other Paragraphs in the Auditor's Report

*Part 9.6. sets out when Emphasis of Matter paragraphs and Other Matter paragraphs in the auditor's report are used.*

*In the context of an audit of service performance information, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or an Other Matter paragraph may describe for example:*

- *The underlying facts and information about the entity's process to select what service performance to report on (e.g., the maturity of the entity's process compared to others in the industry).*
- *The source and method used to measure or evaluate the service performance information and whether they are externally established (e.g., established in legislation or externally established performance frameworks).*
- *Any significant interpretations made in selecting the entity's service performance information or applying the method(s) to measure or evaluate.*
- *Whether there have been any changes in the service performance information disclosed or measurement bases or evaluation methods used.*
- *Any other matters the auditor considers necessary to assist intended users in making decisions based on the service performance information.*
- *Information the auditor considers would enhance transparency and assist the user to understand the level of maturity that the entity has achieved in its reporting.*

#### *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs*

11.16.1. If the auditor considers it necessary to draw users' attention to a matter presented or disclosed in the service performance information that, in the auditor's professional judgement, is of such

importance that it is fundamental to the users' understanding of the service performance information, and the auditor would not be required to modify the opinion as a result of that matter, the auditor shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor's report indicating that the auditor's report is not modified in respect of the matter emphasised.

#### *Other Matter Paragraphs*

11.16.2. If the auditor considers it necessary to communicate a matter other than those that are presented or disclosed in the service performance information that, in the auditor's professional judgement, is relevant to the users' understanding of the audit, the auditor's responsibilities or the auditor's report the auditor shall include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor's report provided this is not prohibited by law or regulation.

### **11.17. Comparative and Prospective Service Performance Information**

#### *Comparative Service Performance Information*

11.17.1. In applying part 9.7, the auditor shall determine whether:

- (a) Prior period comparative service performance information agrees with disclosures presented in the prior period or when appropriate, have been restated; and
- (b) The elements/aspects of service performance, performance measure and/or descriptions, or measurement bases or evaluation methods is consistent with the current period or, if there have been changes, whether those changes have been properly accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed.

#### *Prospective Service Performance Information*

11.17.2. Where the entity presents a comparison of published prospective service performance information with the service performance information, the auditor shall:

- (a) Assess whether the prospective service performance information agrees with the information presented in the published prospective service performance information; or
- (b) Assess that any changes have been properly accounted for and adequately presented and disclosed.

### **11.18. Other Information**

*"Other information" is financial or non-financial information (other than the financial statements, service performance information and the auditor's report thereon) included in an entity's annual report.*

*In the context of service performance information, the distinction between the audited service performance information and the "other information" is not as pronounced as it is for financial information. As a consequence, quite subtle changes in the way that information is presented in the "other information" (such as wording used to describe performance) may provide a misleading impression of the entity's actual performance when compared to the audited service performance information.*

11.18.1. In applying Part 9.8, the auditor shall read the other information, and:

- (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the service performance information; and
- (b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.



**11.19. Specific Focus Areas***Using the Services of a Service Organisation*

11.19.1. In applying part 7.4, if the entity is using the services of a service organisation in the context of service performance information, the auditor shall:

- (a) Determine whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence concerning the relevant service performance information assertions is available at the entity; and, if not,
- (b) Perform further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

*To obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the following procedures may be considered by the auditor:*

- *Inspect records and documents held by the user entity;*
- *Inspect records and documents held by the service organisation;*
- *Obtain confirmations of service performance information from the service organisation in instances where the user entity maintains its own independent records of service performance information.*

*Audit of Group Service Performance Information*

11.19.2. If applying Part 10, the auditor shall obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding:

- (a) the service performance information of the components; and
- (b) the aggregation or consolidation process as it relates to the service performance information.

**11.20. Specific Communication Requirements**

11.20.1. The auditor shall communicate, unless prohibited by law and regulation, the following matters with those charged with governance:

- (a) Any significant risks identified with the service performance information.
- (b) The auditor's views about significant judgements made in reporting the entity's service performance information, including any significant deficiencies or areas for improvement.
- (c) Significant difficulties, if any, encountered during the audit of service performance information.
- (d) Unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, significant matters arising during the audit that were discussed, or subject to correspondence with management.
- (e) Matters involving non-compliance with laws and regulations with respect to service performance reporting obligations.
- (f) Deficiencies in internal control with respect to the service performance information that, in the auditor's professional judgement, are of sufficient importance to merit attention.
- (g) Uncorrected misstatements and the effect that they, individually or in aggregate, may have on the opinion on the service performance information in the auditor's report and request that they are corrected.
- (h) Any modifications including the circumstances and the wording the auditor expects to make to the opinion relating to service performance information in the auditor's report.



**11.21. Specific Documentation Requirements**

*In addition to the general documentation requirements in Part 2.4. which apply throughout the audit engagement, specific matters to be documented relevant to this Part are described below.*

- 11.21.1. In addition to the requirements of paragraph NZ4.7.4., the audit engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement shall include the objective and scope of the audit, and the respective responsibilities of the auditor and those charged with governance, with respect to the service performance information.
- 11.21.2. In applying paragraph 11.6.1., the auditor shall document materiality considerations and/or materiality for service performance information.
- 11.21.3. The auditor shall include in the audit documentation as far as possible, evidence of relevant relationships between the service performance information and the financial statements.

### Glossary of Terms

This glossary lists the terms that are defined for the purpose of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. The definitions assist in the consistent application and interpretation of this standard, and are not intended to override definitions that may be established for other purposes, whether in law or regulation or otherwise. Unless otherwise indicated, the definitions carry the same meanings throughout this standard. In addition, this glossary includes descriptions of other terms found in the ISA (NZ) for LCE to assist in common and consistent interpretation and translation (such other terms are identified by an asterisk “\*”).

**Accounting estimate**—A monetary amount for which the measurement, in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, is subject to estimation uncertainty.

**Accounting records**—The records of initial accounting entries and supporting records, such as records of electronic fund transfers; invoices; contracts; the general and subsidiary ledgers, journal entries and other adjustments to the financial statements that are not reflected in formal journal entries; and records such as work sheets and spreadsheets supporting cost allocations, computations, reconciliations and disclosures.

**Aggregation risk**—The probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements exceeds materiality for the financial statement as a whole.

**Analytical procedures**—Evaluations of financial information through analysis of plausible relationships among both financial and non-financial data. Analytical procedures also encompass such investigation as is necessary of identified fluctuations or relationships that are inconsistent with other relevant information or that differ from expected values by a significant amount.

**Annual report**—A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the entity’s operations and the entity’s financial results and financial position as set out in the financial statements. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon and usually includes information about the entity’s developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity’s governing body, and reports covering governance matters.

**Anomaly**—A misstatement or deviation that is demonstrably not representative of misstatements or deviations in a population.

**Applicable financial reporting framework**—The financial reporting framework adopted by management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance in the preparation of the financial statements that is acceptable in view of the nature of the entity and the objective of the financial statements, or that is required by law or regulation.

The term “fair presentation framework” is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework and:

- (a) Acknowledges explicitly or implicitly that, to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements, it may be necessary for management to provide disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework; or
- (b) Acknowledges explicitly that it may be necessary for management to depart from a requirement of the framework to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements. Such departures are expected to be necessary only in extremely rare circumstances.

The term “compliance framework” is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework, but does not contain the acknowledgements in (a) or (b) above.

**Appropriateness (of audit evidence)**—The measure of the quality of audit evidence; that is, its relevance and its reliability in providing support for the conclusions on which the auditor’s opinion is based.

**Arm’s length transaction**—A transaction conducted on such terms and conditions as between a willing buyer and a willing seller who are unrelated and are acting independently of each other and pursuing their own best interests.

\* **Assess**—Analyse identified risks of material misstatement to conclude on their significance. “Assess,” by convention, is used only in relation to risk. (also see *Evaluate*)

**Assertions**—Representations, explicit or otherwise, with respect to the recognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure of information in the financial statements which are inherent in management representing that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Assertions are used by the auditor to consider the different types of potential misstatements that may occur when identifying, assessing and responding to the risks of material misstatement.

**Assurance**—(see *Reasonable assurance*)

**[NZ] Assurance practitioner**—A person or an organisation, whether in public practice, industry, commerce or the public sector, appointed or engaged to undertake assurance engagements or related services.

**Audit documentation**—The record of audit procedures performed, relevant audit evidence obtained, and conclusions the auditor reached (terms such as “working papers” or “workpapers” are also sometimes used).

**Audit evidence**—Information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor’s opinion is based. Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial statements and other information. (See *Sufficiency of audit evidence* and *Appropriateness of audit evidence*.)

**Audit file**—One or more folders or other storage media, in physical or electronic form, containing the records that comprise the audit documentation for a specific engagement.

**Audit firm**—(see *Firm*)

**Audit opinion**—(see *Modified opinion and Unmodified opinion*)

**Audit risk**—The risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate audit opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated. Audit risk is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk.

**Audit sampling (sampling)**—The application of audit procedures to less than 100% of items within a population of audit relevance such that all sampling units have a chance of selection in order to provide the auditor with a reasonable basis on which to draw conclusions about the entire population.

**Auditor**—“Auditor” is used to refer to the person or persons conducting the audit, usually the engagement partner or other members of the engagement team, or, as applicable, the firm. Where the ISA (NZ) for LCE expressly intends that a requirement or responsibility be fulfilled by the engagement partner, the term “engagement partner” rather than “auditor” is used. “Engagement partner” and “firm” are to be read as referring to their public sector equivalents where relevant.

**Auditor’s expert**—An individual or organisation possessing expertise in a field other than accounting or

auditing, whose work in that field is used by the auditor to assist the auditor in obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence. An auditor's expert may be either an auditor's internal expert (who is a partner<sup>74</sup> or staff, including temporary staff, of the auditor's firm or a network firm), or an auditor's external expert.

**Auditor's point estimate or auditor's range**—An amount, or range of amounts, respectively, developed by the auditor in evaluating management's point estimate.

**Auditor's range**—(see Auditor's point estimate)

**Business risk**—A risk resulting from significant conditions, events, circumstances, actions or inactions that could adversely affect an entity's ability to achieve its objectives and execute its strategies, or from the setting of inappropriate objectives and strategies.

**Comparative financial statements**—Comparative information where amounts and other disclosures for the prior period are included for comparison with the financial statements of the current period but, if audited, are referred to in the auditor's opinion. The level of information included in those comparative financial statements is comparable with that of the financial statements of the current period.

**Comparative information**—The amounts and disclosures included in the financial statements in respect of one or more prior periods in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

**Compliance framework**—(see *Applicable financial reporting framework* and *General purpose framework*)

**Component**—An entity, business unit, function or business activity, or some combination thereof, determined by the auditor for purposes of planning and performing audit procedures in a group audit.

**Component auditor**—An auditor who performs audit work related to a component for purposes of the group audit. A component auditor is a part of the engagement team for a group audit.

**Component management**—Management responsible for a component.

**Component performance materiality**—An amount set by the auditor to reduce aggregation risk to an appropriately low level for purposes of planning and performing audit procedures in relation to a component.

\* **Control activities**—Those policies and procedures that help ensure that management directives are carried out. Control activities are a component of internal control.

\* **Control environment**—Includes the governance and management functions and the attitudes, awareness and actions of those charged with governance and management concerning the entity's internal control and its importance in the entity. The control environment is a component of internal control.

**Control risk**—(see *Risk of material misstatement*)

\* **Controls at the service organisation**—Controls over the achievement of a control objective that is covered by the service auditor's assurance report.

\* **Corporate governance**—(see *Governance*)

**Corresponding figures**—Comparative information where amounts and other disclosures for the prior period are included as an integral part of the current period financial statements, and are intended to be read only in relation to the amounts and other disclosures relating to the current period (referred to as "current period figures"). The level of detail presented in the corresponding amounts and disclosures is dictated primarily by its relevance to the current period figures.

---

<sup>74</sup> "Partner" and "firm" should be read as referring to their public sector equivalents where relevant.

**Controls**—Policies or procedures that an entity establishes to achieve the control objectives of management or those charged with governance. In this context:

- (a) Policies are statements of what should, or should not, be done within the entity to effect control. Such statements may be documented, explicitly stated in communications, or implied through actions and decisions.
- (b) Procedures are actions to implement policies.

**Date of approval of the financial statements**—The date on which all the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared and those with the recognised authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for those financial statements.

**Date of the auditor's report**—The date the auditor dates the report on the financial statements.

**Date of the financial statements**—The date of the end of the latest period covered by the financial statements.

**Date the financial statements are issued**—The date that the auditor's report and audited financial statements are made available to third parties.

**Deficiency in internal control**—This exists when:

- (a) A control is designed, implemented or operated in such a way that it is unable to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements in the financial statements on a timely basis; or
- (b) A control necessary to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements in the financial statements on a timely basis is missing.

**Detection risk**—The risk that the procedures performed by the auditor to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level will not detect a misstatement that exists and that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements.

**Emphasis of Matter paragraph**—A paragraph included in the auditor's report that refers to a matter appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor's judgement, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements.

\* **Engagement letter**—Written terms of an engagement in the form of a letter.

**Engagement partner**<sup>75</sup>—The partner or other individual, appointed by the firm, who is responsible for the audit engagement and its performance, and for the auditor's report that is issued on behalf of the firm, and who, where required, has the appropriate authority from a professional, legal or regulatory body.

[NZ] Public Sector Considerations

Engagement partner includes an employee of the Auditor-General, whom the Auditor-General has appointed under the Public Audit Act 2001 to act as an auditor and who: (i) Is responsible for the engagement and its performance, and for the report that is issued on behalf of the Auditor-General; and (ii) Where required, has the appropriate authority from a professional, legal or regulatory body.

**Engagement quality review**—An objective evaluation of the significant judgements made by the engagement team and the conclusions reached thereon, performed by the engagement quality reviewer and completed on or before the date of the engagement report.

**Engagement quality reviewer**—A partner, other individual in the firm, or an external individual, appointed by the firm to perform the engagement quality review.

---

<sup>75</sup> "Engagement partner," "partner," and "firm" is to be read as referring to their public sector equivalents where relevant.

**Engagement team**—All partners and staff performing the audit engagement, and any other individuals who perform audit procedures on the engagement, excluding an auditor’s external expert and internal auditors who provide direct assistance on an engagement.

\* **Enquiry**—Enquiry consists of seeking information of knowledgeable persons, both financial and non-financial, within the entity or outside the entity.

\* **Error**—An unintentional misstatement in financial statements, including the omission of an amount or a disclosure.

**Estimation uncertainty**—Susceptibility to an inherent lack of precision in measurement.

\* **Evaluate**—Identify and analyse the relevant issues, including performing further procedures as necessary, to come to a specific conclusion on a matter. “Evaluation,” by convention, is used only in relation to a range of matters, including evidence, the results of procedures and the effectiveness of management’s response to a risk. (also see *Assess*)

**Exception**—A response that indicates a difference between information requested to be confirmed, or contained in the entity’s records, and information provided by the confirming party.

**Experienced auditor**—An individual (whether internal or external to the firm) who has practical audit experience, and a reasonable understanding of:

- (a) Audit processes;
- (b) The ISA (NZ) for LCE and applicable legal and regulatory requirements;
- (c) The business environment in which the entity operates; and
- (d) Auditing and financial reporting issues relevant to the entity’s industry.

**Expert**—(see *Auditor’s expert* and *Management’s expert*)

**Expertise**—Skills, knowledge and experience in a particular field.

**External confirmation**—Audit evidence obtained as a direct written response to the auditor from a third party (the confirming party), in paper form, or by electronic or other medium.

**External information source**—An external individual or organisation that provides information that has been used by the entity in preparing the financial statements, or that has been obtained by the auditor as audit evidence, when such information is suitable for use by a broad range of users. When information has been provided by an individual or organisation acting in the capacity of a management’s expert, service organisation, or auditor’s expert the individual or organisation is not considered an external information source with respect to that particular information.

**Fair presentation framework**—(see *Applicable financial reporting framework* and *General purpose framework*)

**Financial statements**—A structured representation of historical financial information, including disclosures, intended to communicate an entity’s economic resources or obligations at a point in time, or the changes therein for a period of time, in accordance with a financial reporting framework. The term “financial statements” ordinarily refers to a complete set of financial statements as determined by the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework, but can also refer to a single financial statement. Disclosures comprise explanatory or descriptive information, set out as required, expressly permitted or otherwise allowed by the applicable financial reporting framework, on the face of a financial statement, or in the notes, or incorporated therein by cross-reference.

**[NZ] Firm**—A sole practitioner, partnership or corporation or other entity of assurance practitioners, or public sector equivalent.

*Public Sector Considerations*

Firm includes the Auditor-General as defined in section 10(1) of the Public Audit Act 2001.

**Fraud**—An intentional act by one or more individuals among management, those charged with governance, employees, or third parties, involving the use of deception to obtain an unjust or illegal advantage.

**Fraud risk factors**—Events or conditions that indicate an incentive or pressure to commit fraud or provide an opportunity to commit fraud.

\* **Fraudulent financial reporting**—Involves intentional misstatements, including omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial statements, to deceive financial statement users.

\* **Further procedures**—Procedures performed in response to assessed risks of *material* misstatement, including tests of controls (if any), tests of details and analytical procedures.

**General purpose financial statements**—Financial statements prepared in accordance with a general purpose framework.

**General information technology (IT) controls**—Controls over the entity's IT processes that support the continued proper operation of the IT environment, including the continued effective functioning of information processing controls and the integrity of information (i.e., the completeness, accuracy and validity of information) in the entity's information system. Also see the definition of *IT environment*.

**General purpose framework**—A financial reporting framework designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users. The financial reporting framework may be a fair presentation framework or a compliance framework.

The term “fair presentation framework” is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework and:

- (a) Acknowledges explicitly or implicitly that, to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements, it may be necessary for management to provide disclosures beyond those specifically required by the framework; or
- (b) Acknowledges explicitly that it may be necessary for management to depart from a requirement of the framework to achieve fair presentation of the financial statements. Such departures are expected to be necessary only in extremely rare circumstances.

The term “compliance framework” is used to refer to a financial reporting framework that requires compliance with the requirements of the framework, but does not contain the acknowledgements in (a) or (b) above.

**Group financial statements**—Financial statements that include the financial information of more than one entity or business unit through a consolidation process. For purposes of the ISA (NZ) for LCE, a consolidation process includes:

- (a) Consolidation, proportionate consolidation, or an equity method of accounting;
- (b) The presentation in combined financial statements of the financial information of entities or business units that have no parent but are under common control or common management; or

The aggregation of the financial information of entities or business units such as branches or divisions.

**Internal audit function**—A function of an entity that performs assurance and consulting activities designed to evaluate and improve the effectiveness of the entity's governance, risk management and internal control processes.

\* **Internal auditors**—Those individuals who carry out the activities of the internal audit function. Internal auditors may belong to an internal audit department or similar function.

\* **Internal control**—The process designed, implemented and maintained by those charged with governance, management and other personnel to provide reasonable assurance about the achievement of an entity’s objectives with regard to reliability of financial reporting, effectiveness and efficiency of operations, and compliance with applicable laws and regulations. The term “controls” refers to any aspects of one or more of the components of internal control.

**International Financial Reporting Standards**—The International Financial Reporting Standards issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

**Non-compliance (in the context of laws and regulations)**—Acts of omission or commission by the entity, either intentional or unintentional, which are contrary to the prevailing laws or regulations. Such acts include transactions entered into by, or in the name of, the entity, or on its behalf, by those charged with governance, management or employees. Non-compliance does not include personal misconduct (unrelated to the business activities of the entity) by those charged with governance, management or employees of the entity.

**[NZ] Misstatement (in the context of Part 11)**—Misstatements can be intentional or unintentional, qualitative or quantitative, and include omissions. Misstatements can arise from error or fraud when:

- (i) An element/aspect of service performance or performance measure and/or description, or a measurement basis or evaluation method is not appropriate and meaningful; or
- (ii) An element/aspect of service performance or performance measure and/or description that would be appropriate and meaningful is omitted; or
- (iii) Incorrectly measuring or evaluating the entity’s service performance.

**Non-response**—A failure of the confirming party to respond, or fully respond, to a positive confirmation request, or a confirmation request returned undelivered.

\* **Observation**—Consists of looking at a process or procedure being performed by others, for example, the auditor’s observation of inventory counting by the entity’s personnel, or of the performance of control activities.

**Opening balances**—Those account balances that exist at the beginning of the period. Opening balances are based upon the closing balances of the prior period and reflect the effects of transactions and events of prior periods and accounting policies applied in the prior period. Opening balances also include matters requiring disclosure that existed at the beginning of the period, such as contingencies and commitments.

**Other information**—Financial or non-financial information (other than financial statements and the auditor’s report thereon) included in an entity’s annual report.

**Other Matter paragraph**—A paragraph included in the auditor’s report that refers to a matter other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgement, is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report.

**Outcome of an accounting estimate**—The actual monetary amount which results from the resolution of the underlying transaction(s), event(s) or condition(s) addressed by the accounting estimate.

**[NZ] Partner**—Any individual with authority to bind the firm with respect to the performance of an engagement governed by the Standards of the XRB (including audits or reviews of financial statements, or other assurance or related services engagements<sup>76</sup>).

#### *Public Sector Considerations*

<sup>76</sup> [NZ] As defined by XRB Au 1 *Application of Auditing and Assurance Standards (Legislative Update)*.



Partner includes an employee of the Auditor-General with authority to bind the Auditor-General with respect to the performance of an engagement governed by the Standards of the XRB (including audits or reviews of financial statements, or other assurance or related services engagements).

**Performance materiality**—The amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than materiality for the financial statements as a whole to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements exceeds materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If applicable, performance materiality also refers to the amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than the materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures.

**Personnel**—Partners and staff of the firm.

**Pervasive**—A term used, in the context of misstatements, to describe the effects on the financial statements of misstatements or the possible effects on the financial statements of misstatements, if any, that are undetected due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. Pervasive effects on the financial statements are those that, in the auditor's judgement:

- (a) Are not confined to specific elements, accounts or items of the financial statements;
- (b) If so confined, represent or could represent a substantial proportion of the financial statements;  
or
- (c) In relation to disclosures, are fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements.

**Population**—The entire set of data from which a sample is selected and about which the auditor wishes to draw conclusions.

**Positive confirmation request**—A request that the confirming party respond directly to the auditor indicating whether the confirming party agrees or disagrees with the information in the request, or providing the requested information.

**Preconditions for an audit**—The use by management of an acceptable financial reporting framework in the preparation of the financial statements and the agreement of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance to the premise on which an audit is conducted.

**Predecessor auditor**—The auditor from a different audit firm, who audited the financial statements of an entity in the prior period and who has been replaced by the current auditor.

**Premise, relating to the responsibilities of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, on which an audit is conducted**—That management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance have acknowledged and understand that they have the following responsibilities that are fundamental to the conduct of an audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE. That is, responsibility:

- (a) For the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, including where relevant their fair presentation;
- (b) For such internal control as management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- (c) To provide the auditor with:
  - (i) Access to all information of which management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance are aware that is relevant to the preparation of the financial statements such as records, documentation and other matters;

- (ii) Additional information that the auditor may request from management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance for the purpose of the audit; and
- (iii) Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom the auditor determines it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

In the case of a fair presentation framework, (a) above may be restated as “for the preparation and *fair* presentation of the financial statements in accordance with the financial reporting framework,” or “for the preparation of financial statements *that give a true and fair view* in accordance with the financial reporting framework.”

The “premise, relating to the responsibilities of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, on which an audit is conducted” may also be referred to as the “premise.”

**Professional judgement**—The application of relevant training, knowledge and experience, within the context provided by auditing, accounting and ethical standards, in making informed decisions about the courses of action that are appropriate in the circumstances of the audit engagement.

**Professional scepticism**—An attitude that includes a questioning mind, being alert to conditions which may indicate possible misstatement due to error or fraud, and a critical assessment of evidence.

**[NZ] Professional standards**—In the context of this standard, the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE) and relevant ethical requirements issued by the External Reporting Board or the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board.

\* **Public sector**—National governments, regional (for example, state, provincial, territorial) governments, local (for example, city, town) governments and related governmental entities (for example, agencies, boards, commissions and enterprises).

**Reasonable assurance (in the context of audit engagements)**—A high, but not absolute, level of assurance.

\* **Recalculation**—Consists of checking the mathematical accuracy of documents or records.

**Related party**—A party that is either:

- (a) A related party as defined in the applicable financial reporting framework; or
- (b) Where the applicable financial reporting framework establishes minimal or no related party requirements:
  - (i) A person or other entity that has control or significant influence, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, over the reporting entity;
  - (ii) Another entity over which the reporting entity has control or significant influence, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries; or
  - (iii) Another entity that is under common control with the reporting entity through having:
    - a. Common controlling ownership;
    - b. Owners who are close family members; or
    - c. Common key management.

However, entities that are under common control by a state (that is, a national, regional or local government) are not considered related unless they engage in significant transactions or share resources to a significant extent with one another.

**Relevant assertions**—An assertion about a class of transactions, account balance or disclosure is relevant when it has an identified risk of material misstatement. The determination of whether an

assertion is a relevant assertion is made before consideration of any related controls (i.e., the inherent risk).

**[NZ] Relevant ethical requirements**—Principles of professional ethics and ethical requirements that are applicable to professional accountants when undertaking the audit engagement. Relevant ethical requirements in New Zealand ordinarily comprise the provisions of the Professional and Ethical Standard 1, *International Code of Ethics for Assurance Practitioners (including International Independence Standards) (New Zealand)* related to audits of financial statements.

\* **Reperformance**—The auditor's independent execution of procedures or controls that were originally performed as part of the entity's internal controls.

**Risks arising from the use of IT**—Susceptibility of information processing controls to ineffective design or operation, or risks to the integrity of information (i.e., the completeness, accuracy and validity of transactions and other information) in the entity's information system, due to ineffective design or operation of controls in the entity's IT processes (see IT environment).

**Risk of material misstatement**—The risk that the financial statements are materially misstated prior to audit. This consists of two components, described as follows at the assertion level:

- (a) Inherent risk—The susceptibility of an assertion about a class of transaction, account balance or disclosure to a misstatement that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, before consideration of any related controls.
- (b) Control risk—The risk that a misstatement that could occur in an assertion about a class of transaction, account balance or disclosure and that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis by the entity's internal control.

**[NZ] Risk of material misstatement (in the context of Part 11)**—The risk that the service performance information is materially misstated prior to the audit. This consists of two components, described as follows at the assertion level:

- (i) Inherent risk – The susceptibility of an assertion about a performance measure and/or description, measurement basis or evaluation method or disclosure to a misstatement that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, before consideration of any related controls.
- (ii) Control risk – The risk that a misstatement that could occur in an assertion about a performance measure and/or description, measurement basis or evaluation method or disclosure and that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis by the entity's system of internal controls.

**Sampling**—(see *Audit sampling*)

**Sampling risk**—The risk that the auditor's conclusion based on a sample may be different from the conclusion if the entire population were subjected to the same audit procedure. Sampling risk can lead to two types of erroneous conclusions:

- (a) In the case of a test of controls, that controls are more effective than they actually are, or in the case of a test of details, that a material misstatement does not exist when in fact it does. The auditor is primarily concerned with this type of erroneous conclusion because it affects audit effectiveness and is more likely to lead to an inappropriate audit opinion.

- (b) In the case of a test of controls, that controls are less effective than they actually are, or in the case of a test of details, that a material misstatement exists when in fact it does not. This type of erroneous conclusion affects audit efficiency as it would usually lead to additional work to establish that initial conclusions were incorrect.

**Sampling unit**—The individual items constituting a population.

**Service auditor**—An auditor who, at the request of the service organisation, provides an assurance report on the controls of a service organisation.

**Service organisation**—A third-party organisation (or segment of a third-party organisation) that provides services to user entities that are relevant to a user entity's process to prepare its financial statements .

\* **Significance**—The relative importance of a matter, taken in context. The significance of a matter is judged by the practitioner in the context in which it is being considered. This might include, for example, the reasonable prospect of its changing or influencing the decisions of intended users of the practitioner's report; or, as another example, where the context is a judgement about whether to report a matter to those charged with governance, whether the matter would be regarded as important by them in relation to their duties. Significance can be considered in the context of quantitative and qualitative factors, such as relative magnitude, the nature and effect on the subject matter and the expressed interests of intended users or recipients.

**Significant class of transactions, account balance or disclosure**—A class of transactions, account balance or disclosure for which there is one or more relevant assertions.

**Significant deficiency in internal control**—A deficiency or combination of deficiencies in internal control that, in the auditor's professional judgement, is of sufficient importance to merit the attention of those charged with governance.

**Significant risk**—An identified risk of material misstatement:

- (a) For which the assessment of inherent risk is close to the upper end of the spectrum of inherent risk due to the significance of the combination of the likelihood of a misstatement occurring and the magnitude of the potential misstatement should that misstatement occur; or
- (b) That is to be treated as a significant risk in accordance with the requirements of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

**Special purpose financial statements**—Financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework.

**Special purpose framework**—A financial reporting framework designed to meet the financial information needs of specific users. The financial reporting framework may be a fair presentation framework or a compliance framework.

**Statistical sampling**—An approach to sampling that has the following characteristics:

- (a) Random selection of the sample items; and
- (b) The use of probability theory to evaluate sample results, including measurement of sampling risk.

A sampling approach that does not have characteristics (a) and (b) is considered non-statistical sampling.

**Stratification**—The process of dividing a population into sub-populations, each of which is a group of sampling units which have similar characteristics (often monetary value).

**Subsequent events**—Events occurring between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report, and facts that become known to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report.

**Substantive procedure**—An audit procedure designed to detect material misstatements at the assertion level. Substantive procedures comprise:

- (a) Tests of details (of classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures); and
- (b) Substantive analytical procedures.

**Sufficiency (of audit evidence)**—The measure of the quantity of audit evidence. The quantity of the audit evidence needed is affected by the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement and also by the quality of such audit evidence.

**System of internal control**—The system designed, implemented and maintained by those charged with governance, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance about the achievement of an entity's objectives with regard to reliability of financial reporting, effectiveness and efficiency of operations, and compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

\* **Test**—The application of procedures to some or all items in a population.

**Tests of controls**—An audit procedure designed to evaluate the operating effectiveness of controls in preventing, or detecting and correcting, material misstatements at the assertion level.

**Those charged with governance**—The person(s) or organisation(s) (for example, a corporate trustee) with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and obligations related to the accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process. For some entities in some jurisdictions, those charged with governance may include management personnel, for example, executive members of a governance board of a private or public sector entity, or an owner-manager.

**Tolerable misstatement**—A monetary amount set by the auditor in respect of which the auditor seeks to obtain an appropriate level of assurance that the monetary amount set by the auditor is not exceeded by the actual misstatement in the population.

**Tolerable rate of deviation**—A rate of deviation from prescribed internal control procedures set by the auditor in respect of which the auditor seeks to obtain an appropriate level of assurance that the rate of deviation set by the auditor is not exceeded by the actual rate of deviation in the population.

**Uncorrected misstatements**—Misstatements that the auditor has accumulated during the audit and that have not been corrected.

**Unmodified opinion**—The opinion expressed by the auditor when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

**User entity**—An entity that uses a service organisation and whose financial statements are being audited.

**Walk-through test (or Walk-through)**—Involves tracing a few transactions through the financial reporting system.

**Written representation**—A written statement by management provided to the auditor to confirm certain matters or to support other audit evidence. Written representations in this context do not include financial statements, the assertions therein, or supporting books and records.

## Illustrative Engagement Letter

The following is an illustrative engagement letter for an audit of general purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework]. This letter is not authoritative but is intended only to be a guide that may be used in conjunction with the considerations outlined in the ISA (NZ) for LCE. It will need to be varied according to individual requirements and circumstances. It is drafted to refer to the audit of financial statements for a single reporting period and would require adaptation if intended or expected to apply to recurring audits (see paragraph 4.4.2). It may be appropriate to seek legal advice that any proposed letter is suitable.

\*\*\*

To the appropriate representative of those charged with governance of ABC Company:<sup>79</sup>

### **[The objective and scope of the audit]**

You<sup>80</sup> have requested that we audit the financial statements of [ABC Company (the “entity”)], which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20XX, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies. We are pleased to confirm our acceptance and our understanding of this audit engagement by means of this letter.

The objectives of our audit are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE) will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

### **[The responsibilities of the auditor]**

We will conduct our audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE. The ISA (NZ) for LCE requires that we comply with ethical requirements. As part of an audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE, we exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Understand internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. However, we will communicate to you in writing

---

<sup>79</sup> The addressees and references in the letter would be those that are appropriate in the circumstances of the engagement, including the relevant jurisdiction.

<sup>80</sup> Throughout this letter, references to “you,” “we,” “us,” “management,” “those charged with governance” and “auditor” would be used or amended as appropriate in the circumstances.

concerning any significant deficiencies in internal control relevant to the audit of the financial statements that we have identified during the audit.

- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by [management and those charged with governance].
- Conclude on the appropriateness of [those charged with governance's] use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the entity to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, together with the inherent limitations of internal control, there is an unavoidable risk that some material misstatements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

***[The responsibilities of those charged with governance and identification of the applicable financial reporting framework]<sup>81</sup>***

Our audit will be conducted on the basis that [those charged with governance]<sup>82</sup> acknowledge and understand that they have responsibility on behalf of the entity:

- For the preparation [and fair presentation] of the financial statements in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework];<sup>83</sup>
- For such internal control as [they] determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- To provide us with:
  - (i) Access to all information of which [management and those charged with governance] is aware that is relevant to the preparation of the financial statements such as records, documentation and other matters;
  - (ii) Additional information that we may request from [management and those charged with governance] for the purpose of the audit; and
  - (iii) Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom we determine it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

As part of our audit process, we will request from [those charged with governance], written confirmation concerning representations made to us in connection with the audit.

We look forward to full cooperation from your staff during our audit.

---

<sup>81</sup> For purposes of this illustrative engagement letter, it is assumed that the auditor has not determined that the law or regulation prescribes those responsibilities in appropriate terms; the descriptions in paragraph 4.2.1(b) of this standard are therefore used)

<sup>82</sup> Use terminology as appropriate in the circumstances.

<sup>83</sup> Or, if appropriate, "For the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework]"

**[Other relevant information]**

*[Insert other information, such as fee arrangements, billings and other specific terms, as appropriate.]*

**[Reporting]**

*[Insert appropriate reference to the expected form and content of the auditor's report including, if applicable, the reporting on other information.]*

The form and content of our report may need to be amended in the light of our audit findings.

Please sign and return the attached copy of this letter to indicate your acknowledgement of, and agreement with, the arrangements for our audit of the financial statements including our respective responsibilities.

XYZ & Co.

Acknowledged and agreed on behalf of ABC Company by

(signed)

.....

Name and Title

Date



**[NZ] APPENDIX 2A****Illustrative Engagement Letter including Service Performance Information**

The following is an illustrative engagement letter for an audit of a [financial report/ performance report], which comprise financial statements and service performance information, prepared in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework]. This letter is not authoritative but is intended only to be a guide that may be used in conjunction with the considerations outlined in the ISA (NZ) for LCE. It will need to be varied according to individual requirements and circumstances. It is drafted to refer to the audit of a [financial report/ performance report] for a single reporting period and would require adaptation if intended or expected to apply to recurring audits (see paragraph 4.4.2). It may be appropriate to seek legal advice that any proposed letter is suitable.

\*\*\*

To the appropriate representative of those charged with governance of ABC Charity:<sup>84</sup>

**[The objective and scope of the audit]**

You<sup>85</sup> have requested that we audit the [financial report/ performance report] of [ABC Charity (the “entity”)], which comprise the financial statements, and the service performance information [, and entity information]. The complete set of financial statements comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20XX, [the statement of comprehensive revenue and expense, statement of financial performance, statement of changes in net assets/equity], and the statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory notes. We are pleased to confirm our acceptance and our understanding of this audit engagement by means of this letter.

The objectives of our audit are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the [financial report/ performance report] as a whole is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE) will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of this [financial report/ performance report].

**[The responsibilities of the auditor]**

We will conduct our audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE. The ISA (NZ) for LCE requires that we comply with ethical requirements. As part of an audit in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE, we exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the [financial report/ performance report], whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

<sup>84</sup> The addressees and references in the letter would be those that are appropriate in the circumstances of the engagement, including the relevant jurisdiction.

<sup>85</sup> Throughout this letter, references to “you,” “we,” “us,” “management,” “those charged with governance” and “auditor” would be used or amended as appropriate in the circumstances.

- Understand internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. However, we will communicate to you in writing concerning any significant deficiencies in internal control relevant to the audit of the [financial report/ performance report] that we have identified during the audit.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by [management and those charged with governance].
- Obtain an understanding of the process applied by the entity to select its elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and the measurement bases or evaluation methods.
- Evaluate whether the selection of elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods present an appropriate and meaningful assessment of the entity's service performance in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework].
- Evaluate whether the service performance information is prepared in accordance with the entity's measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of [those charged with governance's] use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the [financial report/ performance report] or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the entity to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the [financial report/ performance report], including the disclosures, and whether the [financial report/ performance report] represents the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, together with the inherent limitations of internal control, there is an unavoidable risk that some material misstatements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

***[The responsibilities of those charged with governance and identification of the applicable financial reporting framework]<sup>86</sup>***

Our audit will be conducted on the basis that [those charged with governance]<sup>87</sup> acknowledge and understand that they have responsibility on behalf of the entity:

- For the preparation [and fair presentation] of the [financial report/ performance report] in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework];<sup>88</sup>
- For the selection of elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods that present service performance

<sup>86</sup> For purposes of this illustrative engagement letter, it is assumed that the auditor has not determined that the law or regulation prescribes those responsibilities in appropriate terms; the descriptions in paragraph 4.2.1(b) of this standard are therefore used)

<sup>87</sup> Use terminology as appropriate in the circumstances.

<sup>88</sup> Or, if appropriate, "For the preparation of a [financial report/ performance report] that give a true and fair view in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework]"

information that is appropriate and meaningful in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;

- For the preparation and fair presentation of service performance information in accordance with the entity’s measurement bases or evaluation methods, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- For the overall presentation, structure and content of the service performance information in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework;
- For such internal control as [they] determine is necessary to enable the preparation of [financial report/ performance report] that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and
- To provide us with:
  - (i) Access to all information of which [management and those charged with governance] is aware that is relevant to the preparation of the financial statements such as records, documentation and other matters;
  - (ii) Additional information that we may request from [management or those charged with governance] for the purpose of the audit; and
  - (iii) Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom we determine it necessary to obtain audit evidence.

As part of our audit process, we will request from [those charged with governance], written confirmation concerning representations made to us in connection with the audit.

We look forward to full cooperation from your staff during our audit.

**[Other relevant information]**

*[Insert other information, such as fee arrangements, billings and other specific terms, as appropriate.]*

**[Reporting]**

*[Insert appropriate reference to the expected form and content of the auditor’s report including, if applicable, the reporting on other information.]*

The form and content of our report may need to be amended in the light of our audit findings.

Please sign and return the attached copy of this letter to indicate your acknowledgement of, and agreement with, the arrangements for our audit of the [financial report/ performance report] including our respective responsibilities.

XYZ & Co.

Acknowledged and agreed on behalf of ABC Charity by

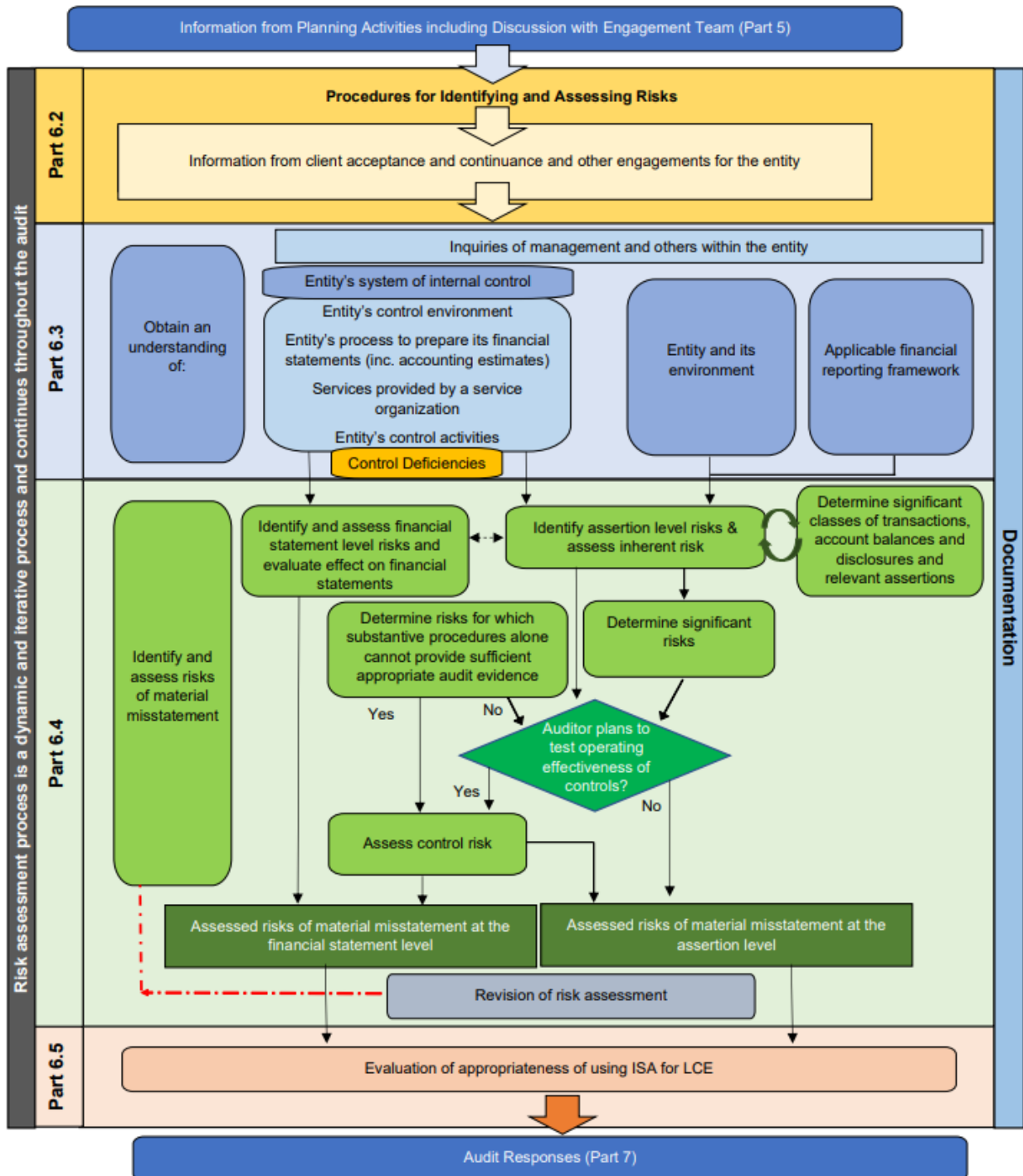
(signed)

.....

Name and Title

Date

Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement (Part 6)



## Fraud Risk Factors

The fraud risk factors set out below are examples of factors that may be faced by auditors during an audit of less complex entities. Examples are separately presented for the two types of fraud – fraudulent financial reporting and misappropriation of assets.

The risk factors are further classified based on the three conditions generally present when material misstatements due to fraud occur: (a) incentives/pressures, (b) opportunities, and (c) attitudes/rationalisations. Although the risk factors cover a broad range of situations, they are only examples and, accordingly, the auditor may identify additional or different risk factors. Not all of these examples are relevant in all circumstances, and some may be of greater or lesser significance in entities of different sizes or with different ownership characteristics or circumstances. Also, the order of the examples risk factors provided is not intended to reflect their relative importance or frequency of occurrence.

### Risk Factors Relating to Misstatements Arising from Fraudulent Financial Reporting

The following are examples of risk factors relating to misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting.

#### *Incentives/Pressures*

Financial stability or profitability is threatened by economic, industry, or entity operating conditions, such as (or as indicated by):

- Significant declines in customer demand or increasing business failures in the industry or overall economy.
- High degree of competition or market saturation, accompanied by declining margins.
- Operating losses causing the threat of bankruptcy or foreclosure.
- Recurring negative cash flows from operations or an inability to generate cash flows from operations.

Pressure exists for management to meet the requirements or expectations of third parties due to:

- Pressure to renew, or obtain additional, financing, or to meet debt repayment or debt covenant requirements and therefore to overstate performance or position in order to demonstrate profitability and long-term viability.
- Pressure to understate revenue in order to reduce tax liabilities.

#### *Opportunities*

Opportunities to engage in fraudulent financial reporting that can arise from the following:

- Related-party transactions not in the ordinary course of business or with related entities not audited or audited by another firm.
- The domination of management by a single person or small group (in a non owner-managed business) without compensating controls.
- The system of internal control is deficient as a result of the following:
  - Limited segregation of duties or anti-fraud controls (e.g., fraud hotlines)

- Inadequate involvement of management in operations or other activities that may help management to prevent or detect misstatements in accounting information, or to identify controls that are not operating as intended.
- Accounting and information systems that are not effective, including situations involving significant deficiencies in internal control.

#### *Attitudes/Rationalisations*

- Poor communication, implementation, support, or enforcement of the entity's values or ethical standards by management, or the communication of inappropriate values or ethical standards.
- The owner-manager makes no distinction between personal and business transactions.
- Dispute between shareholders in a closely held entity.
- Recurring attempts by management or owners to justify marginal or inappropriate accounting on the basis of materiality or to help the company survive.
- The relationship between management and the current or predecessor auditor is strained by disputes, unreasonable demands on the auditor, restrictions on access to people or information, or domineering management behaviour.

#### **Risk Factors Arising from Misstatements Arising from Misappropriation of Assets**

Some of the risk factors related to misstatements arising from fraudulent financial reporting may also be present when misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets occur, which often is a common fraud in less complex entities. For example, deficiencies in internal control may be present when misstatements due to either fraudulent financial reporting or misappropriation of assets exist. The following are examples of risk factors related to misstatements arising from misappropriation of assets.

#### *Incentives/Pressures*

- Personal financial obligations may create pressure on management or employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to theft to misappropriate those assets.
- Adverse relationships between the entity and employees with access to cash or other assets susceptible to theft may motivate those employees to misappropriate those assets. For example:
- Known or anticipated future employee layoffs.
- Recent or anticipated changes to employee compensation or benefit plans.
- Promotions, compensation, or other rewards inconsistent with expectations.

#### *Opportunities*

Certain characteristics or circumstances may increase the susceptibility of assets to misappropriation:

- Large amounts of cash on hand or processed.
- Inventory items that are small in size, of high value, or in high demand.
- Fixed assets which are small in size, marketable, or lacking observable identification of ownership.

Inadequate internal control over assets may increase the susceptibility of misappropriation of those assets. For example, misappropriation of assets may occur because there is the following:

- Inadequate segregation of duties or independent checks.
- Inadequate system of authorisation and approval of transactions (for example, in purchasing).

- Inadequate record keeping or physical safeguards over cash, inventory, or fixed assets.
- Lack of mandatory vacations for employees performing key control functions.
- Inadequate management understanding of information technology.

*Attitudes/Rationalisations*

- Disregard for the need for monitoring or reducing risks related to misappropriations of assets.
- Disregard for internal control by overriding existing controls or failing to take appropriate remedial action on known misappropriations, including petty theft.
- Behaviour indicating displeasure or dissatisfaction with the entity or its treatment of the employee.

## Assertions

In identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement, the auditor of less complex entities (LCEs) may use the categories of assertions as described below or may express them differently provided all aspects described below have been covered. The auditor may choose to combine the assertions about classes of transactions and events, and related disclosures, with the assertions about account balances, and related disclosures.

An auditor of an LCE may use the following assertions in considering the different types of potential misstatements that may occur. The assertions may fall into the following categories:

### *Assertions About Classes of Transactions and Events, and Related Disclosures, For the Period Under Audit*

- Occurrence—transactions and events that have been recorded or disclosed have occurred, and such transactions and events pertain to the entity.
- Completeness—all transactions and events that should have been recorded have been recorded, and all related disclosures that should have been included in the financial statements have been included.
- Accuracy—amounts and other data relating to recorded transactions and events have been recorded appropriately, and related disclosures have been appropriately measured and described.
- Cutoff—transactions and events have been recorded in the correct accounting period.
- Classification—transactions and events have been recorded in the proper accounts.
- Presentation—transactions and events are appropriately aggregated or disaggregated and clearly described, and related disclosures are relevant and understandable in the context of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

### *Assertions About Account Balances, and Related Disclosures, At the Period End*

- Existence—assets, liabilities and equity interests exist.
- Rights and obligations—the entity holds or controls the rights to assets, and liabilities are the obligations of the entity.
- Completeness—all assets, liabilities and equity interests that should have been recorded have been recorded, and all related disclosures that should have been included in the financial statements have been included.
- Accuracy, valuation and allocation—assets, liabilities and equity interests have been included in the financial statements at appropriate amounts and any resulting valuation or allocation adjustments have been appropriately recorded, and related disclosures have been appropriately measured and described.
- Classification—assets, liabilities and equity interests have been recorded in the proper accounts.
- Presentation—assets, liabilities and equity interests are appropriately aggregated or disaggregated and clearly described, and related disclosures are relevant and understandable in the context of the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.



The assertions described above, adapted as appropriate, may also be used by the auditor in considering the different types of misstatements that may occur in disclosures not directly related to recorded classes of transactions, events or account balances.

*[NZ] Assertions about Service Performance Information (when applying Part 11)*

Assertions used by the auditor in considering the different types of potential misstatements of service performance information that may occur may fall into the following categories:

- Occurrence—service performance that has been reported has occurred.
- Attributable to the entity—the service performance reported by the entity includes only service performance that the entity has evidence to support its involvement with either directly or in conjunction with other entities with common goals.
- Completeness—all important service performance that should have been reported has been included in the service performance information.
- Accuracy—service performance has been reported, measured and described appropriately and is not inconsistent with the financial statement information.
- Cut-off—service performance has been reported in the correct period.
- Presentation—service performance is appropriately aggregated or disaggregated, clearly displayed and not misleading, and related disclosures are relevant and understandable.

The auditor may use the assertions as described above or may express them differently provided all aspects described above have been covered. For example, the auditor may choose to combine the assertions about occurrence and attribution or based on the nature of the service performance information reported consider existence may be more appropriate than occurrence.

## APPENDIX 6

### Examples of Factors Influencing Sample Size for Tests of Controls and Test of Details

The following are factors that the auditor may consider when determining the sample size for tests of controls. These factors, which need to be considered together, assume the auditor does not modify the nature or timing of tests of controls or otherwise modify the approach to substantive procedures in response to assessed risks.

<b>Factor Influencing Sample Size for Tests of Controls</b>	<b>Effect on sample size</b>
An increase in the extent to which the auditor's risk assessment takes into account plans to test the operating of effectiveness of controls	Increase
An increase in the tolerable rate of deviation	Decrease
An increase in the expected rate of deviation of the population to be tested	Increase
An increase in the auditor's desired level of assurance that the tolerable rate of deviation is not exceeded by the actual rate of deviation in the population	Increase
An increase in the number of sampling units in the population	Negligible effect

The following are factors that the auditor may consider when determining the sample size for tests of details. These factors, which need to be considered together, assume the auditor does not modify the approach to tests of controls or otherwise modify the nature or timing of substantive procedures in response to the assessed risks.

<b>Factor Influencing Sample Size for Tests of Details</b>	<b>Effect on sample size</b>
An increase in the auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement	Increase
An increase in the use of other substantive procedures directed at the same assertion	Decrease
An increase in the auditor's desired level of assurance that tolerable misstatement is not exceeded by actual misstatement in the population	Increase
An increase in tolerable misstatement	Decrease
An increase in the amount of misstatement the auditor expects to find in the population	Increase
Stratification of the population when appropriate	Decrease
The number of sampling units in the population	Negligible effect

**[NZ] APPENDIX 7****Illustrative Representation Letter**

The following illustrative letter includes written representations that are required by Part 8.6 of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. It is assumed in this illustration that the requirement to obtain a written representation relating to going concern is not relevant; and that there are no exceptions to the requested written representations. If there were exceptions, the representations would need to be modified to reflect the exceptions.

(Entity Letterhead)

(To Auditor)

(Date)

This representation letter is provided in connection with your audit of the financial statements of [ABC Company (the "entity")], for the year ended December 31, 20XX for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view*) in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework] issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board.

We confirm that (, *to the best of our knowledge and belief, having made such enquiries as we considered necessary for the purpose of appropriately informing ourselves*):

*Financial Statements*

- We have fulfilled our responsibilities on behalf of the entity, as set out in the terms of the audit engagement dated [insert date], for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with [applicable financial reporting framework]; in particular the financial statements are fairly presented (or give a true and fair view) in accordance therewith.
- The methods, the data, and the significant assumptions used in making accounting estimates, and their related disclosures are appropriate to achieve recognition, measurement or disclosure that is reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the requirements of [applicable financial reporting framework].
- All events subsequent to the date of the financial statements and for which [applicable financial reporting framework] require adjustment or disclosure have been adjusted or disclosed.
- The effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements as a whole. A list of the uncorrected misstatements is attached to the representation letter.
- Any actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements are accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- [Any other matters that the auditor may consider appropriate.]

*Information Provided*

- We have provided you with:
  - Access to all information of which we are aware that is relevant to the preparation of the financial statements, such as records, documentation and other matters;
  - Additional information that you have requested from us for the purpose of the audit; and

- Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom you determined it necessary to obtain audit evidence.
- All transactions have been recorded in the accounting records and are reflected in the financial statements.
- We have disclosed to you the results of our assessment of the risk that the financial statements may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.
- We have disclosed to you all information in relation to fraud or suspected fraud that we are aware of and that affects the entity and involves:
  - Management;
  - Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
  - Others where the fraud could have a material effect on the financial statements.
- We have disclosed to you all information in relation to allegations of fraud, or suspected fraud, affecting the entity’s financial statements communicated by employees, former employees, analysts, regulators or others.
- We have disclosed to you all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with law or regulation whose effects should be considered when preparing financial statements.
- We have disclosed to you all known actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements.
- We have disclosed to you the identity of the entity’s related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which we are aware.
- [Any other matters that the auditor may consider necessary.]

Signed on behalf of [Those Charged with Governance] of [ABC Company] by:

(signed)  
 .....  
 Name and Title

(signed)  
 .....  
 Name and Title

**[NZ] APPENDIX 7A****Illustrative Representation Letter including Service Performance Information<sup>89</sup>**

The following illustrative letter includes written representations that are required by Part 11.11. and Part 8.6. of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. It is assumed in this illustration that the applicable financial reporting framework is a fair presentation framework, that the requirement to obtain a written representation relating to going concern is not relevant; and that there are no exceptions to the requested written representations. If there were exceptions, the representations would need to be modified to reflect the exceptions.

(Entity Letterhead)

(To Auditor)

(Date)

This representation letter is provided in connection with your audit of the [financial report/ performance report] of [ABC Entity (the “entity”)], for the year ended December 31, 20XX which comprise the financial statements, and the service performance information [, and entity information], for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether the [financial report/ performance report] presents fairly, in all material respects, (or *gives a true and fair view of*):

- [the entity information as at December 31, 20XX; and]
- the financial position of the entity as at December 31, 20XX, and its financial performance, and its cash flows for the year then ended; and
- the service performance for the year ended December 31, 20XX in that the service performance information is appropriate and meaningful and prepared in accordance with the entity’s measurement bases or evaluation methods

in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework (e.g.: PBE Standards)] issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board.

We confirm that (, *to the best of our knowledge and belief, having made such enquiries as we considered necessary for the purpose of appropriately informing ourselves*):

*[Financial Report/ Performance Report]*

- We have fulfilled our responsibilities on behalf of the entity, as set out in the terms of the audit engagement dated [insert date], for:
  - The preparation of the [financial report/ performance report] in accordance with the [applicable financial reporting framework]; in particular the [financial report/ performance report] is fairly presented (or give a true and fair view) in accordance therewith.
  - The selection of elements/aspects of service performance, performance measures and/or descriptions and measurement bases or evaluation methods that present service performance information that is appropriate and meaningful in accordance with the [applicable financial reporting framework];
  - The preparation of service performance information in accordance with the entity’s measurement bases or evaluation methods in accordance with the [applicable financial reporting framework]; and
  - The overall presentation structure and content of the service performance information in accordance with the [applicable financial reporting framework].

<sup>89</sup> May also be referred to as the Statement of Service Performance.

- The methods, the data, and the significant assumptions used in making accounting estimates, and their related disclosures are appropriate to achieve recognition, measurement or disclosure that is reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework.
- Related party relationships and transactions have been appropriately accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the requirements of [applicable financial reporting framework].
- All events subsequent to the date of the financial statements and for which [applicable financial reporting framework] require adjustment or disclosure have been adjusted or disclosed.
- The effects of uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the [financial report/ performance report] as a whole. A list of the uncorrected misstatements is attached to the representation letter.
- Any actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements are accounted for and disclosed in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.
- [Any other matters that the auditor may consider appropriate.]

#### *Information Provided*

- We have provided you with:
  - Access to all information of which we are aware that is relevant to the preparation of the [financial report/ performance report], such as records, documentation and other matters;
  - Additional information that you have requested from us for the purpose of the audit; and
  - Unrestricted access to persons within the entity from whom you determined it necessary to obtain audit evidence.
- All transactions have been recorded in the accounting records and are reflected in the [financial report/ performance report].
- We have disclosed to you the results of our assessment of the risk that the [financial report/ performance report] may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.
- We have disclosed to you all information in relation to fraud or suspected fraud that we are aware of and that affects the entity and involves:
  - Management;
  - Employees who have significant roles in internal control; or
  - Others where the fraud could have a material effect on the [financial report/ performance report].
- We have disclosed to you all information in relation to allegations of fraud, or suspected fraud, affecting the entity's [financial report/ performance report] communicated by employees, former employees, analysts, regulators or others.
- We have disclosed to you all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with law or regulation whose effects should be considered when preparing a [financial report/ performance report].
- We have disclosed to you all known actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered when preparing the [financial report/ performance report].
- We have disclosed to you the identity of the entity's related parties and all the related party relationships and transactions of which we are aware.

- [Any other matters that the auditor may consider necessary.]

Signed on behalf of [Those Charged with Governance] of [ABC Charity] by:

(signed)

.....

Name and Title

(signed)

.....

Name and Title

## CONFORMING AMENDMENTS ARISING FROM THE ISA (NZ) FOR LCE

**Note:** The following are conforming amendments to other assurance standards as a result of the approval of the ISA (NZ) for LCE. These amendments will become effective at the same time as the ISA (NZ) for LCE and are shown with marked changes from the latest approved versions of the assurance standards that are amended. The footnote numbers within these amendments do not align with the assurance standards that are amended, and reference should be made to those assurance standards.

### XRB Au1 APPLICATION OF AUDITING AND ASSURANCE STANDARDS

#### **APPENDIX 2B**

#### **INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING (NEW ZEALAND) FOR AUDITS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESS COMPLEX ENTITIES**

*This appendix is an integral part of the Standard*

This appendix lists the standard to be applied in conducting an audit of historical financial information of a Less Complex Entity, when the entity meets the requirements of the authority of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

ISA (NZ) for LCE International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) for audits of financial statements of less complex entities

...

#### **APPENDIX 6**

[ISA (NZ) for LCE to be added to the diagram: Overview of the Auditing and Assurance Standards of the XRB, and the Engagements Governed by the Standards.]

...

### **PES 1, INTERNATIONAL CODE OF ETHICS FOR ASSURANCE PRACTITIONERS (INCLUDING INTERNATIONAL INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS) (NEW ZEALAND)**

...

#### **SECTION 400**

#### **APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK TO INDEPENDENCE FOR AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS**

...

400.4 Professional and Ethical Standard 3<sup>90</sup> requires a firm to design, implement and operate a system of quality management for audits or reviews of financial statements performed by the firm. As part of this system of quality management, Professional and Ethical Standard 3 requires the firm to

---

<sup>90</sup> Professional and Ethical Standard 3, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*



establish quality objectives that address the fulfilment of responsibilities in accordance with relevant ethical requirements including those related to independence. Under Professional and Ethical Standard 3, relevant ethical requirements are those related to the firm, its personnel and, when applicable, others subject to independence the requirements to which the firm and the firm's engagements are subject. International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand), International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE), International Standards on Review Engagements (New Zealand) and New Zealand Standards on Review Engagements establish responsibilities for engagement partners and engagement teams at the level of the engagement for audits and reviews, respectively. The allocation of responsibilities within a firm will depend on its size, structure and organisation. Many of the provisions of this Part do not prescribe the specific responsibility of individuals within the firm for actions related to independence, instead referring to "firm" for ease of reference. A firm assigns operational responsibility for compliance with independence requirements to an individual(s) in accordance with Professional and Ethical Standard 3. In addition, an individual assurance practitioner remains responsible for compliance with any provisions that apply to that assurance practitioner's activities, interests or relationships.

...

## **SECTION 900**

### **APPLYING THE CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK TO INDEPENDENCE FOR ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDIT AND REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS**

...

900.3 Professional and Ethical Standard 3 requires a firm to design, implement and operate a system of quality management for assurance engagements performed by the firm. As part of this system of quality management, Professional and Ethical Standard 3 requires the firm to establish quality objectives that address the fulfilment of responsibilities in accordance with relevant ethical requirements, including those related to independence. Under Professional and Ethical Standard 3, relevant ethical requirements are those related to the firm, its personnel and, when applicable, others subject to the independence requirements to which the firm and the firm's engagements are subject. In addition, International Standards on Assurance Engagements (New Zealand), Standards on Assurance Engagements, International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE) and International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) establish responsibilities for engagement partners and engagement teams at the level of the engagement. The allocation of responsibilities within a firm will depend on its size, structure and organisation. Many of the provisions of Part 4B do not prescribe the specific responsibility of individuals within the firm for actions related to independence, instead referring to "firm" for ease of reference. A firm assigns operational responsibility for compliance with independence requirements to an individual(s) in accordance with Professional and Ethical Standard 3. Additionally, an individual assurance practitioner remains responsible for compliance with any provisions that apply to that assurance practitioner's activities, interests or relationships.

...

## **GLOSSARY**

...

**Assurance engagement** An engagement in which an assurance practitioner aims to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence in or to express a conclusion designed to enhance the degree of confidence of the intended users other than the responsible party about the subject matter information (that is, the outcome of the measurement or evaluation of an underlying subject matter against criteria).

(ISAE (NZ) 3000 (Revised) describes the elements and objectives of an assurance engagement conducted under that Standard and Explanatory Guide (EG) Au1 *Overview of Auditing and Assurance Standards* provides a general description of assurance engagements to which International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) (ISAs (NZ)), International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE), International Standards on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISREs (NZ)), New Zealand Standard on Review Engagements (NZ SRE), International Standards on Assurance Engagements (New Zealand) (ISAEs (NZ)), and Standards on Assurance Engagements (SAEs) apply.)

*In Part 4B, the term ‘assurance engagement’ refers to assurance engagements that are not audit or review engagements.*

**Audit engagement** A reasonable assurance engagement in which an assurance practitioner expresses an opinion whether financial statements are prepared, in all material respects (or give a true and fair view or are presented fairly, in all material respects), in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework, such as an engagement conducted in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) or International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE). This includes a Statutory Audit, which is an audit required by legislation or other regulation.

### **PES 3, QUALITY MANAGEMENT FOR FIRMS THAT PERFORM AUDITS OR REVIEWS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, OR OTHER ASSURANCE OR RELATED SERVICES ENGAGEMENTS**

...

#### **Application and Other Explanatory Material**

##### **Scope of this Professional and Ethical Standard (Ref: Para. 3–4)**

- A1. Other pronouncements of the NZAuASB, including the International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE), ISRE (NZ) 2400<sup>91</sup> and ISAE (NZ) 3000 (Revised),<sup>92</sup> also establish requirements for the engagement partner for the management of quality at the engagement level.

...

##### **Authority of this Professional and Ethical Standard (Ref: Para. 12)**

...

<sup>91</sup> International Standard on Review Engagements (ISRE) (NZ) 2400, *Engagements to Review Historical Financial Statements*

<sup>92</sup> International Standard on Assurance Engagements (ISAE) (NZ) 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information*

A8. Where necessary, the application and other explanatory material provides further explanation of the requirements and guidance for carrying them out. In particular, it may:

- Explain more precisely what a requirement means or is intended to cover; and
- Include examples that illustrate how the requirements might be applied.

While such guidance does not in itself impose a requirement, it is relevant to the proper application of the requirements. The application and other explanatory material may also provide background information on matters addressed in this PES. In certain instances, references are included to individual ISAs. If the audit engagement is conducted in accordance with the ISA (NZ) for LCE, the ISA (NZ) for LCE may also address related matters in the context of an audit of the financial statements of a less complex entity but these are not referenced in this PES. Where appropriate, additional considerations specific to public sector audit organisations are included within the application and other explanatory material. These additional considerations assist in the application of the requirements in this PES. They do not, however, limit or reduce the responsibility of the firm to apply and comply with the requirements in this PES.

...

## Engagement Performance

...

*Engagement Documentation* (Ref: Para. 31(f))

A83. Law, regulation or professional standards may prescribe the time limits by which the assembly of final engagement files for specific types of engagements are to be completed. Where no such time limits are prescribed in law or regulation, the time limit may be determined by the firm. In the case of engagements conducted under the ISAs (NZ), the ISA (NZ) for LCE or ISAEs (NZ) or SAEs, an appropriate time limit within which to complete the assembly of the final engagement file is ordinarily not more than 60 days after the date of the engagement report.

...

A85. Law, regulation or professional standards may prescribe the retention periods for engagement documentation. If the retention periods are not prescribed, the firm may consider the nature of the engagements performed by the firm and the firm's circumstances, including whether the engagement documentation is needed to provide a record of matters of continuing significance to future engagements. In the case of engagements conducted under the ISAs, the ISA (NZ) for LCE or ISAEs or SAEs, the retention period is ordinarily no shorter than five years from the date of the engagement report, or, if later, the date of the auditor's report on the group financial statements, when applicable.

...

## PES 4, ENGAGEMENT QUALITY REVIEWS

### Introduction

...

#### Authority of this Professional and Ethical Standard

10. This PES contains the objective for the firm in following this PES, and requirements designed to enable the firm and the engagement quality reviewer to meet that stated objective. In addition, this PES contains related guidance in the form of application and other explanatory material and

introductory material that provides context relevant to a proper understanding of this PES, and definitions. PES 3<sup>93</sup> explains the terms objective, requirements, application and other explanatory material, introductory material, and definitions. (Ref: Para. A0A)

...

## Application and Other Explanatory Material

### **Authority of this Professional and Ethical Standard (Ref: Para. 10)**

A0A. The application and other explanatory material may also provide background information on matters addressed in this PES. In certain instances, references are included to individual International Standards on Auditing New Zealand (ISAs (NZ)). If the audit engagement is conducted in accordance with the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE), the ISA (NZ) for LCE may also address related matters in the context of an audit of the financial statements of a less complex entity but these are not referenced in this PES.

...

### **Performance of the Engagement Quality Review (Ref: Para. 24–27)**

*Engagement Partner Responsibilities in Relation to the Engagement Quality Review (Ref: Para. 24(b))*

A25. ISA 220 (NZ) (Revised)<sup>94</sup> establishes the requirements for the engagement partner in audit engagements for which an engagement quality review is required, including:

- Determining that an engagement quality reviewer has been appointed;
- Cooperating with the engagement quality reviewer and informing other members of the engagement team of their responsibility to do so;
- Discussing significant matters and significant judgements arising during the audit engagement, including those identified during the engagement quality review, with the engagement quality reviewer; and
- Not dating the auditor’s report until the completion of the engagement quality review.

...

## **ISAE (NZ) 3000 (REVISED), ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS OTHER THAN AUDITS OR REVIEWS OF HISTORICAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

### **Introduction**

1. This International Standard on Assurance Engagements (New Zealand) (ISAE (NZ)) deals with assurance engagements other than audits or reviews of historical financial information, ~~which Audits of historical financial information~~ are dealt with in International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) (ISAs (NZ)) and the International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE), and reviews of historical financial information are dealt with in International Standards on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISREs (NZ)), respectively. (Ref: Para. A21–A22)

...

<sup>93</sup> PES 3, paragraph 14

<sup>94</sup> ~~International Standard on Auditing (ISA (NZ))~~ 220 (Revised), *Quality Management for an Audit of Financial Statements*, paragraph 36

**ISRE (NZ) 2400, REVIEW OF HISTORICAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
PERFORMED BY AN ASSURANCE PRACTITIONER WHO IS NOT THE  
AUDITOR OF THE ENTITY**

...

**Requirements**

...

**The Assurance Practitioner's Report**

86. The assurance practitioner's report for the review engagement shall be in writing, and shall contain the following elements: (Ref: Para. A122–A125, A146, A148)

...

- (g) A description of a review of financial statements and its limitations, and the following statements: (Ref: Para. A132)
  - (i) A review engagement under this ISRE (NZ) is a limited assurance engagement;
  - (ii) The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained; and
  - (iii) The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand) (ISAs (NZ)) and, accordingly, the practitioner does not express an audit opinion on the financial statements;

...

**Appendix 2**

...

**Illustration 1**

...

*Assurance Practitioner's Responsibility*

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion on the accompanying financial statements. We conducted our review in accordance with International Standard on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISRE (NZ)) 2400, *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is not the Auditor of the Entity*. ISRE (NZ) 2400 requires us to conclude whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the financial statements, taken as a whole, are not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. This Standard also requires us to comply with relevant ethical requirements.

A review of financial statements in accordance with ISRE (NZ) 2400 is a limited assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained.

The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board International Standards

~~on Auditing (New Zealand)~~. Accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion on these financial statements.

...

## Illustration 2

...

### *Assurance Practitioner's Responsibility*

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion on the accompanying financial statements. We conducted our review in accordance with International Standard on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISRE (NZ)) 2400, *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is not the Auditor of the Entity*. ISRE (NZ) 2400 requires us to conclude whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the financial statements, taken as a whole, are not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. This Standard also requires us to comply with relevant ethical requirements.

A review of financial statements in accordance with ISRE (NZ) 2400 is a limited assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained.

The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board ~~International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand)~~. Accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion on these financial statements.

...

## Illustration 3

...

### **Assurance Practitioner's Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion on the accompanying financial statements. We conducted our review in accordance with International Standard on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISRE (NZ)) 2400, *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is not the Auditor of the Entity*. ISRE (NZ) 2400 requires us to conclude whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the financial statements, taken as a whole, are not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. This Standard also requires us to comply with relevant ethical requirements.

A review of financial statements in accordance with ISRE (NZ) 2400 is a limited assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained.

The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board ~~International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand)~~. Accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion on these financial statements.

...

#### Illustration 4

...

##### *Assurance Practitioner's Responsibility*

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion on the accompanying consolidated financial statements. We conducted our review in accordance with International Standard on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISRE (NZ)) 2400, *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is not the Auditor of the Entity*. ISRE (NZ) 2400 requires us to conclude whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the consolidated financial statements, taken as a whole, are not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. This Standard also requires us to comply with relevant ethical requirements.

A review of consolidated financial statements in accordance with ISRE (NZ) 2400 is a limited assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained.

The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board ~~International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand)~~. Accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion on these consolidated financial statements.

...

#### Illustration 6

...

##### **Assurance Practitioner's Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion on the accompanying financial statements. We conducted our review in accordance with International Standard on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISRE (NZ)) 2400, *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is not the Auditor of the Entity*. ISRE (NZ) 2400 requires us to conclude whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the financial statements, taken as a whole, are not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. This Standard also requires us to comply with relevant ethical requirements.

A review of financial statements in accordance with ISRE (NZ) 2400 is a limited assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained.

The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board ~~International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand)~~. Accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion on these financial statements.

...

#### Illustration 7

...

##### **Assurance Practitioner's Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion on the accompanying financial statement. We conducted our review in accordance with International Standard on Review Engagements (New Zealand) (ISRE (NZ)) 2400, *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is not the Auditor of the Entity*. ISRE (NZ) 2400 requires us to conclude whether anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the financial statement is not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. This Standard also requires us to comply with relevant ethical requirements.

A review of financial statements in accordance with ISRE 2400 (Revised) is a limited assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner performs procedures, primarily consisting of making enquiries of management and others within the entity, as appropriate, and applying analytical procedures, and evaluates the evidence obtained.

The procedures performed in a review are substantially less than those performed in an audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards issued by the External Reporting Board ~~International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand)~~. Accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion on this financial statement.

...



## **ACCOMPANYING ATTACHMENT: CONFORMITY TO THE INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING FOR AUDITS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF LESS COMPLEX ENTITIES**

This conformity statement accompanies but is not part of the ISA (NZ) for LCE.

### **Conformity with International Standards on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities**

This International Standard on Auditing (New Zealand) for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA (NZ) for LCE) conforms to International Standard on Auditing for Audits of Financial Statements of Less Complex Entities (ISA for LCE), issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), an independent standard-setting board of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC).

Paragraphs that have been amended or added to this ISA (NZ) for LCE (and do not appear in the text of the equivalent ISA for LCE), are identified with the prefix "NZ".

This ISA (NZ) for LCE incorporates terminology and definitions used in New Zealand.

Part 11 has been added to this ISA (NZ) for LCE to enable the audit of service performance information. It does not appear in ISA for LCE.

Compliance with this ISA (NZ) for LCE enables compliance with ISA for LCE.

### **Comparison with Australian Auditing Standards**

There is no equivalent Australian Auditing Standard, issued by the Australian Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB).

## NZAuASB Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<b>AGENDA ITEM NO.</b>	5.1
<b>Meeting date:</b>	16 June 2024
<b>Subject:</b>	Monitoring of assurance climate reporting and assurance
<b>Date:</b>	25 May 2024
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Karen Tipper

---

**Action Required**

**For Information Purposes Only**

---

### Agenda Item Objectives

The objective of this agenda item is for the Board's to **NOTE** the results of the analysis of assurance provided over the first tranche of published climate statements for the year ended 31 December 2023.

### Background

1. The first tranche of climate statements prepared in accordance with the Aotearoa Climate Standards were filed on 30 April 2024.
2. Mandatory assurance of the greenhouse gas disclosures (GHG) within the climate statements is not required in the first year of reporting.

### Summary of findings

3. 25 climate statements were filed for the year ending 31 December 2023. These were from a mix of sectors including insurance, energy companies, banks and media companies.. 15 of these entities took advantage of the first-time adoption exemption to report their full value chain emissions.
4. 12 of the statements include a reference to obtaining assurance. None of the assurance detailed in the disclosures or in a separate assurance report was performed in accordance with our temporary standard NZ SAE 1<sup>1</sup>. This was expected given these references to assurance are to voluntary assurance and not, in most instances, related to the GHG emission disclosures included in the climate statements.
5. 42% of assurance was obtained in accordance with ISAE (NZ) 3410<sup>2</sup> and 42% with ISO 14064-3: 2019<sup>3</sup>. This assurance was all voluntary assurance. This split is in line with what we were seeing in the voluntary market. All assurance obtained under ISAE (NZ) 3410<sup>4</sup> was performed by the financial statement auditor.

---

<sup>1</sup> NZ SAE 1: *Assurance over Greenhouse Gas Emissions Disclosures*

<sup>2</sup> ISAE (NZ) 3410 *Assurance Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Statements*

<sup>3</sup> ISO 14064-3:2019 *Part 3: Specification with guidance for the verification and validation of greenhouse gas statements*

<sup>4</sup> ISAE (NZ) 3410 *Assurance Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Statements*

6. Only 1 assurance report covered the Scope 1 and Scope 2 GHG emission disclosures included in the climate statements. This report was limited assurance over the scope 1 and scope 2 greenhouse gas emissions disclosures. The engagement was performed in accordance with ISAE (NZ) 3410<sup>5</sup> The assurance referenced in the remaining 11 statements was obtained over the GHG inventory report as opposed to the GHG disclosures included in the Climate statements.
7. Assurance obtained on the GHG emissions was as follows:
  - a. 4 were assured to Limited Assurance.
  - b. 5 were Mixed assurance, (Reasonable Scope 1 and 2, Limited Scope 3).
  - c. 1 was Reasonable Assurance – Scope 1, 2 and 3 full value chain.
8. Given that assurance is not mandatory until October 2024 and no one has early adopted our assurance standard, there is currently limited information. We anticipate that this will change over time as the regime develops. We intend to monitor the following aspects as we move from voluntary to mandatory assurance:
  - a. Which standards are being used for Assurance
  - b. Who is doing the assurance - Financial Statement auditor or other
  - c. Level of Assurance obtained
  - d. Who is taking advantage of the first-year exemption to report Scope 3 Value Chain emissions
  - e. What ethical and independence standards are used for the assurance engagement
  - f. What quality management standards are used for the assurance engagements
  - g. Modified Opinions
  - h. Key Matters and what these relate to
  - i. Emphasis of Matter paragraphs and what these cover
  - j. Restatements
  - k. Whether the entity has obtained assurance over other disclosures within the climate statements

### **Recommendations**

9. We recommend that the Board **NOTE** this paper.

### **Material Presented**

Agenda item: 5.1

Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<sup>5</sup> ISAE (NZ) 3410 *Assurance Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Statements*

## NZAuASB Board Meeting Summary Paper

---

<b>AGENDA ITEM NO.</b>	6.1
<b>Meeting date:</b>	12 June 2024
<b>Subject:</b>	Impact of IFRS 18 changes on ISAs (NZ)
<b>Date:</b>	24 May 2024
<b>Prepared By:</b>	Anna Herlender

---

**Action Required**

**For Information Purposes Only**

---

### Agenda Item Objectives

1. The objective of this agenda item is to APPROVE:
  - the amending standard *Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as a Result of Adoption of NZ IFRS 18*; and
  - signing memorandum.

### Background

2. The IFRS Foundation issued [guidelines](#) that state that the accounting standards issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) should be referred to as IFRS<sup>®</sup> Accounting Standards.
3. The IASB operationalised the guidelines in a new accounting standard IFRS 18 *Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements* (IFRS 18). The standard refers to “IFRS Accounting Standards” as opposed to “IFRS” or “International Financial Reporting Standards”.
4. In May 2024, the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board (NZASB) approved New Zealand equivalent to International Financial Reporting Standard 18 *Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements* (NZ IFRS 18).
5. NZ IFRS 18 refers to IFRS Accounting Standards in a similar manner as IFRS 18. Additionally, references to the full name of “New Zealand equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards” are changed to “New Zealand equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”. The acronym “NZ IFRS” remains unchanged.
6. Relevant to this discussion, NZ IFRS 18 also introduces the following changes:
  - Withdrawal of NZ IAS 1 *Presentation of Financial Statements*. Requirements from NZ IAS 1 have been moved either to NZ IFRS 18, NZ IAS 8 or NZ IFRS 7.
  - Change of the name of NZ IAS 8 to “Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements”.
  - Change of the name of NZ IFRS 1 to “NZ IFRS 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand Equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”.
7. NZ IFRS 18 will be applicable to New Zealand for-profit entities for annual reporting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2027 – with earlier application permitted for accounting periods that begin before this date, but which do not end before it takes effect.

**Matters to Consider**

8. In light of the adoption of NZ IFRS 18 by the XRB, staff recommends that the auditing and assurance standards issued by the XRB are updated to refer to:
  - “IFRS Accounting Standards” instead of “IFRS” or “International Financial Reporting Standards”
  - “New Zealand equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards” instead of “New Zealand equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards”
  - NZ IFRS 18 or NZ IAS 8 instead of NZ IAS 1
  - Change of the name of NZ IAS 8 to “Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements”
  - Change of the name of NZ IFRS 1 to “NZ IFRS 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand Equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”.
9. The above changes impact paragraphs referring to basis of preparation of financial statements in illustrative engagement letters, audit reports and representation letters.
10. These changes are included in a draft amending standard (agenda item 6.2).

***Considerations regarding due process***

11. We consider that [section 22\(1\)](#) of the Financial Reporting Act 2013 does not apply and that a formal public consultation is not necessary because:
  - a. The amendments are consequential in nature, as a result of adoption of NZ IFRS 18.
  - b. The changes are minor and relate only to change of the names, they do not change any intention of the current requirements or application material in any of the standards.
  - c. It is of no value to the standard setting process for a consultation/engagement process to be undertaken and there would be no beneficial results from such a process.

***Timing***

12. We propose to align the commencement and application date of the amending standard with the commencement and application date of NZ IFRS 18 to align with when an entity adopts NZ IFRS 18.
13. This will result in changes to New Zealand standards made ahead of changes to the standards issued by International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) and the standards issued by Auditing and Assurance Standards Board in Australia (AUASB).
14. The IAASB intends to:
  - update illustrative reports and the glossary in the 2024 edition of IAASB Handbook.
  - include a paragraph in the IAASB Handbook that notes that references to IFRS and IAS mean references to IFRS Accounting standards.
  - follow IFRS foundation guidelines with references to IFRS Accounting Standards in any new or revised standards.
15. AUASB still need to consider the impact on Australian auditing and assurance standards. We note that Australian Accounting Standards do not have “IFRS” in their name, therefore the impact of the naming changes in Australian auditing and assurance standards might be even smaller.

16. The question was raised at the Need to Know assurance webinar as to what the XRB are doing with the auditing standards. We recommend updating the XRB auditing standard to align with the reporting standards as these standards need to work together.

**Questions to the Board**

1. Does the Board approve the Amending Standard and the Signing Memorandum?
2. Does the Board agree that the Amending Standard is issued ahead of changes by the IAASB and the AUASB?

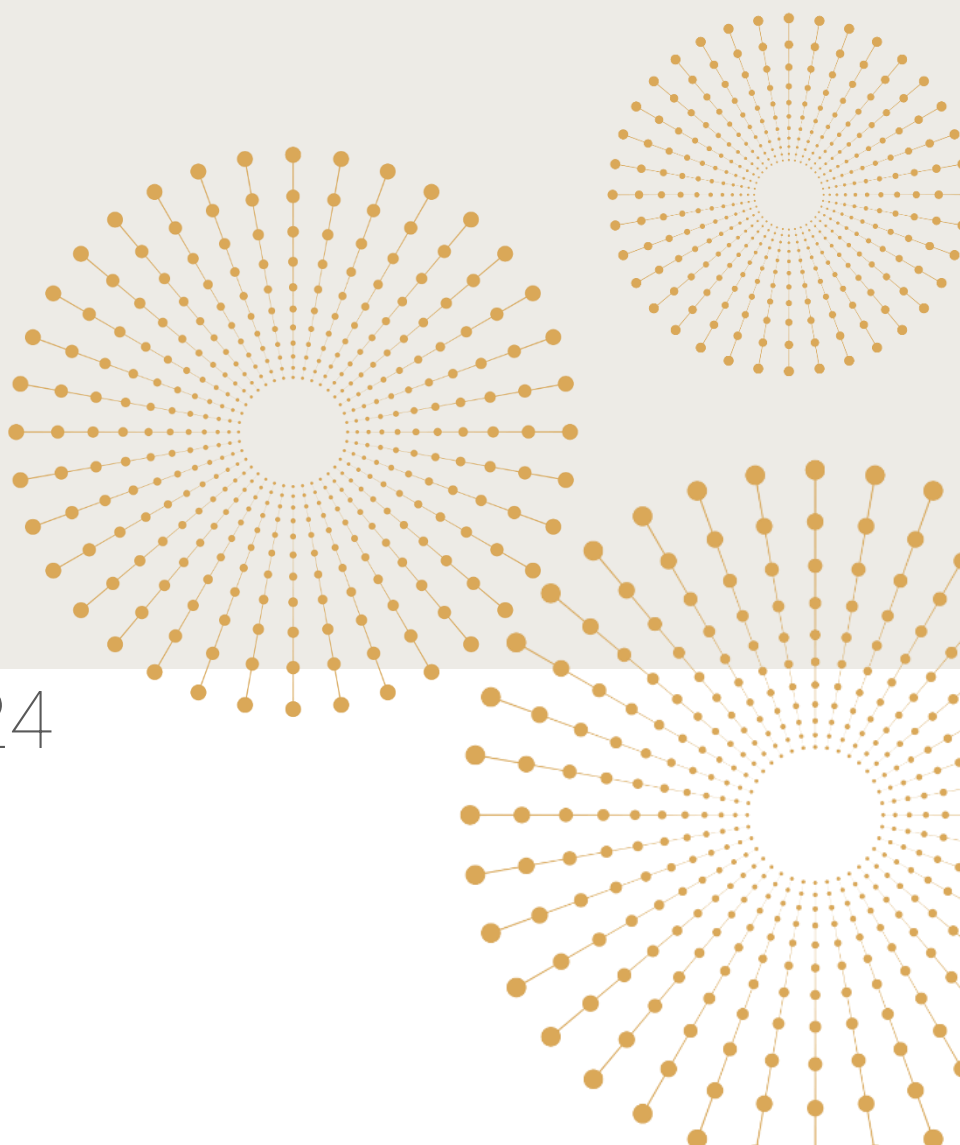
**Material Presented**

Agenda item 6.1	Board Meeting Summary Paper
Agenda item 6.2	Draft Amending Standard
Agenda item 6.3	Draft Signing Memorandum

# Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as a Result of Adoption of NZ IFRS 18

Commencement and application dates: refer to Part A of this standard

Issued June 2024



## **AMENDMENTS TO AUDITING AND ASSURANCE STANDARDS AS A RESULT OF ADOPTION OF NZ IFRS 18**

### **Legal status of Standard**

This Standard was issued on [TBC] by the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board of the External Reporting Board (XRB) pursuant to section 12(b) of the Financial Reporting Act 2013.

This Standard is secondary legislation for the purposes of the Legislation Act 2019. An auditor or assurance practitioner, that is required to apply this Standard, is required to apply the Standard in accordance with the application date which is set out in Part A.

This Standard has been issued to reflect the amendments necessary to auditing and assurance standards as a result of the adoption of NZ IFRS 18 *Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements*.

### **COPYRIGHT**

© External Reporting Board (“XRB”) 2024

This XRB standard contains copyright material and reproduces, with the permission of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC), parts of the corresponding international standard issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (“IAASB”), and published by IFAC. Reproduction within New Zealand in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgement of the source.

Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within New Zealand should be addressed to the Chief Executive, External Reporting Board at the following email address:

[enquiries@xrb.govt.nz](mailto:enquiries@xrb.govt.nz)

All existing rights (including copyrights) in this material outside of New Zealand are reserved by IFAC, with the exception of the right to reproduce for the purposes of personal use or other fair dealing. Further information can be obtained from IFAC at [www.ifac.org](http://www.ifac.org) or by writing to [permissions@ifac.org](mailto:permissions@ifac.org)

ISBN [TBC]



**AMENDMENTS TO AUDITING AND ASSURANCE STANDARDS AS A RESULT OF  
ADOPTION OF NZ IFRS 18**

*Issued by the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board*

**CONTENTS**

---

	Page
<b>A: Commencement and application.....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>B: Introduction .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>C: Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as a Result of the Adoption of NZ IFRS 18 Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements .....</b>	<b>7</b>

## **A: Commencement and application**

### **When standard takes effect (Section 27 Financial Reporting Act 2013)**

1. This standard takes effect on the 28th day after the date of its publication under the Legislation Act 2019<sup>1</sup>.

### **Accounting period in relation to which standards commence to apply (section 28 Financial Reporting Act 2013)**

2. The accounting periods in relation to which this standard commences to apply are:
  - (a) for an **early adopter**, those accounting periods, following and including, the **early adoption accounting period**.
  - (b) for any other auditor or assurance practitioner, those accounting periods following, and including, the first accounting period that begins on or after the **mandatory date**.

3. In paragraph 2:

**early adopter** means an auditor or assurance practitioner that applies this standard for an early adoption accounting period.

**early adoption accounting period** means the accounting period:

- (a) that begins before the mandatory date but has not ended or does not end before this standard takes effect (and to avoid doubt, that period may have begun before this standard takes effect); and
- (b) for which the early adopter:
  - (i) first applies this standard for any audit, review or assurance engagement; and
  - (ii) discloses in the auditor's or assurance practitioner's report for that accounting period that this standard has been applied for that period.

**mandatory date** means 1 January 2027.

---

<sup>1</sup> The standard was published on [TBC] and takes effect on [TBC].

## B: Introduction

Part C of this Standard contains amendments to auditing and assurance standards as a result of the adoption of NZ IFRS 18 Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements.

Amendments	The following underline and strikethrough are used to indicate amendments throughout the auditing and assurance standards
Change of the name of “International Financial Reporting Standards” to “IFRS Accounting Standards”	<del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>
Change of the name of “IFRS” and “IFRSs” to “IFRS Accounting Standards”	IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> <del>IFRSs</del> <u>Accounting Standards</u>
Change of the name of “New Zealand equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards” to “New Zealand equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”	New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>
Name of NZ IAS 8 changed to “Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements”	NZ IAS 8 <del>Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors</del> <u>Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements</u>
Name of NZ IFRS 1 changed to “NZ IFRS 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand Equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”.	NZ IFRS 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand Equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>
References to NZ IAS 1 changed to NZ IFRS 18 or NZ IAS 8.	<del>NZ IAS 1</del> <u>NZ IFRS 18</u> <i>Or</i> <del>NZ IAS 1</del> <u>NZ IAS 8</u> <i>And</i> <i>References to particular paragraphs updated accordingly.</i>

The amendments affect the following standards:

- ISA (NZ) 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing (New Zealand)*
- ISA (NZ) 210 *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*
- ISA (NZ) 450 *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*
- ISA (NZ) 510 *Initial Audit Engagements – Opening Balances*
- ISA (NZ) 570 *Going Concern (Revised)*
- ISA (NZ) 580 *Written Representation*
- ISA (NZ) 600 (Revised) *Special Considerations – Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*
- ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised) *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*
- ISA (NZ) 705 (Revised) *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*
- ISA (NZ) 706 (Revised) *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*
- ISA (NZ) 710 *Comparative Information – Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements*
- ISA (NZ) 720 (Revised) *The Auditor's Responsibility Relating to Other Information*
- ISA (NZ) 800 (Revised) *Special Considerations – Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks*
- ISA (NZ) 805 (Revised) *Special Considerations – Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement*
- ISA (NZ) 810 (Revised) *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*
- ISRE (NZ) 2400 *Review of Historical Financial Statements Performed by an Assurance Practitioner who is Not the Auditor of the Entity.*
- NZ SRE 2410 (Revised) *Review of Financial Statements Performed by the Independent Auditor of the Entity*
- SAE 3450 *Assurance Over Financial Information Prepared in Connection with a Capital Raising.*

### C: Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as of result of the adoption of NZ IFRS 18 Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements

Standard	Paragraph	Updated Content
ISA (NZ) 200	A7	...for example, <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).
ISA (NZ) 200	NZ A7.1	Examples of financial reporting requirements that are designed to achieve fair presentation in New Zealand include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS);</li> <li>• New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> Reduced Disclosure Regime (NZ IFRS RDR); ...</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 210	A8	...Examples of such financial reporting include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> promulgated as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board; ...</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 210	NZ A8.1	Examples of financial reporting requirements that are designed to achieve fair presentation in New Zealand include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS);</li> <li>• New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> Reduced Disclosure Regime (NZ IFRS RDR); ...</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 210	Appendix 1 Example of an Audit Engagement Letter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction</li> <li>• The responsibilities of the auditor</li> <li>• Footnote 26</li> </ul>	... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> .
ISA (NZ) 210	Appendix 2 Para 4	The auditor may decide to compare the accounting conventions to the requirements of an existing financial reporting framework considered to be acceptable. For example, the auditor may compare the accounting conventions to IFRSs <u>Accounting Standards</u> .
ISA (NZ) 450	A1 (f) - Footnote 7	For example, NZ IFRS requires an entity to provide additional disclosures when compliance with the specific requirements in NZ IFRS is insufficient to enable users to

		understand the impact of particular transactions, other events and conditions on the entity's financial position and financial performance ( <del>New Zealand equivalent to International Accounting Standard 1, Presentation of Financial Statements, paragraph 17(e)</del> ) <u>New Zealand equivalent to International Accounting Standard 8, Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements, paragraph 6C (c).</u> )
ISA (NZ) 510	Appendix Introduction to Illustration 1, 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS) (a general purpose framework).</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 510	Illustration 2 Opinions	... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 570 (Revised)	3 Including footnote 1	<p>... For example, New Zealand Equivalent to International Accounting Standard (NZ IAS) 48 requires management to make an assessment of an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.<sup>1</sup></p> <p><sup>1</sup> NZ IAS 4, <del>Presentation of Financial Reports, paragraphs 25–26</del> <u>8, Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements, paragraph 6K – 6L.</u></p>
ISA (NZ) 570 (Revised)	A11, footnote 11	<sup>11</sup> For example, NZ IAS 48 defines this as a period that should be at least, but is not limited to, twelve months from the end of the reporting period.
ISA (NZ) 570 (Revised)	A21	The phrase “material uncertainty” is used in NZ IAS 48 in discussing the uncertainties related to events or conditions which may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern that should be disclosed in the financial statements.
ISA (NZ) 570 (Revised)	A29	The Appendix to this ISA (NZ) provides illustrations of the statements that are required to be included in the auditor's report on the financial statements when New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS) is the applicable financial reporting framework.
ISA (NZ) 570 (Revised)	[NZ] Illustration 1, 2, 3	... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 580	Illustrative Representation Letter	The following illustrative letter includes written representations that are required by this and other ISAs (NZ). It is assumed in this illustration that the applicable financial

		reporting framework is New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ...
ISA (NZ) 580	Illustrative Representation Letter	This representation letter is provided in connection with your audit of the financial statements of ABC Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX <sup>11</sup> for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether the financial statements comply with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ...  <sup>11</sup> Where the auditor reports on more than one period, the auditor adjusts the date so that the letter pertains to all periods covered by the auditor's report.
ISA (NZ) 580	Illustrative Representation Letter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>We have fulfilled our responsibilities on behalf of the entity, as set out in the terms of the audit engagement dated [insert date], for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>;...</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 600 (Revised)	Appendix 1 Qualified opinion	... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	9	Reference to " <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> " in this ISA (NZ) means the <del>International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs)</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> issued by the International Accounting Standards Board, ...
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	27	If the reference to the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor's opinion is not to <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> issued by the International Accounting Standards Board ...
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	NZ9.1	Reference to "New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS)" or other applicable financial reporting requirements in this ISA (NZ) means the New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> or other financial reporting requirements issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board.
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	27	If the reference to the applicable financial reporting framework in the auditor's opinion is not to <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> issued by the International Accounting Standards Board or IPSASs issued by the International Public

		Sector Accounting Standards Board, the auditor's opinion shall identify the jurisdiction of origin of the framework.
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	50 (c)	(c) An Opinion section containing an expression of opinion on the financial statements and a reference to the applicable financial reporting framework used to prepare the financial statements (including identifying the jurisdiction of origin of the financial reporting framework that is not <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> or International Public Sector Accounting Standards, see paragraph 26).
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	A7 Footnote 23	<sup>23</sup> For example, New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS) note that fair presentation requires the faithful representation of the effects of transactions, other events and conditions in accordance with the definitions and recognition criteria for assets, liabilities, income and expenses.
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	A7 Footnote 25	<sup>25</sup> For example, NZ IFRS require an entity to provide additional disclosures when compliance with the specific requirements in NZ IFRS is insufficient to enable users to understand the impact of particular transactions, other events and conditions on the entity's financial position and financial performance (New Zealand equivalents to International Accounting Standard 1, <del>Presentation of Financial Statements, paragraph 17(e)</del> <u>8 Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements, paragraph 6C (c)</u> ).
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	A12	A description of the applicable financial reporting framework that contains imprecise qualifying or limiting language (e.g., "the financial statements are in substantial compliance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ") is not an adequate description of that framework as it may mislead users of the financial statements.
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	A13	In some cases, the financial statements may represent that they are prepared in accordance with two financial reporting frameworks (e.g., NZ IFRS and <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ).
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	A13	... (e.g., financial statements prepared in accordance with NZ IFRS that also describe the extent to which they comply with <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ).
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	A28	"... in accordance with <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> "



<p>ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)</p>	<p>NZA28.1</p>	<p>Examples of applicable financial reporting requirements in New Zealand (and which are issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board) are the following:</p> <p>“... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS)”;</p> <p>“... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> Reduced Disclosure Regime (NZ IFRS RDR)”;</p>
<p>ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)</p>	<p>A29</p>	<p>When the applicable financial reporting framework encompasses financial reporting standards and legal or regulatory requirements, the framework is identified in such terms as “... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> and the requirements of Jurisdiction X Corporations Act.”</p>
<p>ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)</p>	<p>A30</p>	<p>(a) ...and an opinion that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the other applicable financial reporting framework (e.g., <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>).</p> <p>These opinions may be expressed separately or in a single sentence (e.g., the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects [...], in accordance with NZ IFRS and with <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>).</p> <p>(b) If the financial statements comply with one of the frameworks but fail to comply with the other framework, an unmodified opinion can be given that the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the one framework (e.g., <del>IFRSs</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>) ...</p>
<p>ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)</p>	<p>NZ Illustration 1,2 Opinion</p>	<p>...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).</p>
<p>ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)</p>	<p>NZ Illustration 1 Footnote 3 NZ Illustration 2 Footnote 7</p>	<p>... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>, and for such ...”</p>
<p>ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)</p>	<p>NZ Illustration 3 Footnote 9</p>	<p>... The Auditor’s Report would identify one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>. (This may</li> </ul>

		<p>also include compliance with <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New Zealand equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards Reduced Disclosure Regime...</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 700 (Revised)	Conformity with International Standards on Auditing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reference to “New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS)” or other applicable financial reporting requirements in this ISA (NZ) means the New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> or other financial reporting requirements issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board...</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 705 (Revised)	NZ Illustration 1,2, 3 Opinion	...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 706 (Revised)	A13	An entity may prepare one set of financial statements in accordance with a general purpose framework (e.g., the appropriate accounting standards in New Zealand) and another set of financial statements in accordance with another general purpose framework (e.g., <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ), and engage the auditor to report on both sets of financial statements
ISA (NZ) 706 (Revised)	Appendix 3 Illustration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS) (a general purpose framework).</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 706 (Revised)	Appendix 3 Illustration and Appendix 4 Illustration	<p><b>Opinion</b></p> <p>...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).</p>
ISA (NZ) 710	Appendix Illustration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS) (a general purpose framework).</li> </ul>
ISA (NZ) 710	Appendix Illustration 1 and 2 and 4	<p><b>Qualified Opinion</b></p>

		...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 710	Appendix Illustration 3	<b>Opinion</b> ...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 720 (Revised)	Illustration 1, 2, 3, 4, 5	<b>Opinion</b> ...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 720 (Revised)	Illustration 6	<b>Qualified Opinion</b> ...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 720 (Revised)	Illustration 7	<b>Adverse Opinion</b> ...in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISA (NZ) 800 (Revised)	[NZ] Illustration 3	<b>Other Matter</b> The Company has prepared a separate set of financial statements for the year ended December 31, 20X1 in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> on which we issued a separate auditor's report to the shareholders of the Company dated March 31, 20X2.
ISA (NZ) 805 (Revised)	6 (b)	(b) "New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> " means the New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRSs) issued by the New Zealand Accounting Standards Board;
ISA (NZ) 805 (Revised)	[NZ] Illustration 1	<b>Summary Financial Statements</b> The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).

ISA (NZ) 805 (Revised)	[NZ] Illustration 3	<p><b>The Audited Financial Statements and Our Report Thereon</b></p> <p>We expressed a qualified audit opinion on the audited financial statements in our report dated February 15, 20X2. The basis for our qualified audit opinion was [that management has not stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value but has stated them solely at cost, which constitutes a departure from <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>]</p>
ISA (NZ) 810 (Revised)	[NZ] Illustration	The summary financial statements do not contain all the disclosures required by New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS).
ISRE (NZ) 2400	86 (h) (ii)	A reference to the applicable financial reporting framework used to prepare the financial statements, including identification of the jurisdiction of origin of the financial reporting framework that is not <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> or <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> for Small and Medium-sized Entities issued by the International Accounting Standards Board...
ISRE (NZ) 2400	A111	.. (for example, “the financial statements are in substantial compliance with <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ”...
ISRE (NZ) 2400	A133	<p>“... in accordance with New Zealand Equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u>;”</p> <p>“... in accordance with New Zealand Equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> Reduced Disclosure Regime;”</p>
ISRE (NZ) 2400	A134	“... in accordance with New Zealand Equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> and the requirements of Jurisdiction X Corporations Act.”
ISRE (NZ) 2400	Appendix 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction to Illustration</li> <li>• Illustration</li> </ul>	...prepared in accordance with New Zealand Equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRSs)...
ISRE (NZ) 2400	Appendix 2	Illustration 1: ...for example, the New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS</u>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Illustrative Review Reports with Unmodified Conclusions. Illustration 1</li> <li>• Introduction to Illustration 1</li> <li>• Directors Responsibility for Financial Statements</li> <li>• Footnote 26</li> </ul>	<u>Accounting Standards</u> Reduced Disclosure Regime (NZ IFRS RDR)
ISRE (NZ) 2400	Appendix 2 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction to Illustration 1</li> <li>• Director’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements</li> <li>• Footnote 26</li> <li>• Conclusion</li> </ul>	... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> Reduced Disclosure Regime...
ISRE (NZ) 2400	Appendix 2 Introduction to Illustration 3	...a financial reporting framework designed to achieve fair presentation other than New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ...
ISRE (NZ) 2400	Illustration 3: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directors’ Responsibilities for the Financial Statements; and</li> <li>• Footnote 30</li> <li>• Qualified Conclusion</li> </ul>	...when the financial reporting framework used is not the New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ...
ISRE (NZ) 2400	Appendix 2: Illustration 4: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction; and</li> <li>• The Directors’ Responsibilities for the Financial Statements; and</li> <li>• Footnote 33</li> </ul>	... in accordance with New Zealand equivalents to <del>International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ...

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adverse Conclusion</li> </ul> <p>Illustration 5:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction; and</li> <li>• The Directors' Responsibilities for the Financial Statements; and</li> <li>• Footnote 35</li> </ul>	
ISRE (NZ) 2400	<p>Appendix 2: Illustration 4 Basis for Adverse Conclusion</p>	<p>...Under New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u>, the subsidiary should...</p>
NZ SRE 2410 (Revised)	A31	<p>New Zealand Equivalent to <del>International Accounting Standard 1 Presentation of Financial Statements</del> <u>Financial Reporting Standard 18 Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements</u> provides requirements and explanatory guidance relating to comparative information included in financial statements prepared in accordance with New Zealand Accounting Standards. New Zealand Equivalent to International Financial Reporting Standard 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> provides requirements and guidance relating to comparative information when an entity adopts New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> for the first time.</p>
SAE 3450	Footnote 8	<p>...in accordance with New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> ...</p>
SAE 3450	A8	<p>A stated basis of preparation may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The recognition and measurement principles contained in New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (but not all the presentation and disclosure requirements) and the entity's adopted accounting policies;</li> <li>• The recognition and measurement principles contained in New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> adjusted for pro forma adjustments, selected by the responsible party and disclosed in the applicable disclosure document...</li> </ul>

<p>SAE 3450</p>	<p>Appendix 1 Illustrative</p>	<p><i>Objective of the Review Engagement</i> ...in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles of IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p> <p><i>Scope of the Review Engagement</i> ...being the recognition and measurement principles contained in IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p> <p><i>Scope of the limited assurance engagement</i> ... i. Pro Forma Historical Financial Information ... being the recognition and measurement principles of IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p> <p>ii. PFI ...being the recognition and measurement principles contained in IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p> <p>iii. Pro Forma PFI ...being the recognition and measurement principles contained in IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p>
<p>SAE 3450</p>	<p>Appendix 1 Illustrative Representation Letter</p>	<p>... being the recognition and measurement principles of IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p>
<p>SAE 3450</p>	<p>Appendix 3 Illustration 1 Conclusions</p>	<p>...being the recognition and measurement principles contained in New Zealand <del>Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS)...</p>
<p>SAE 3450</p>	<p>Appendix 3 Illustration 2  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conclusion</li> <li>• Financial Information subject to assurance</li> </ul> </p>	<p>... being the recognition and measurement principles contained in <del>International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)</del> <u>IFRS Accounting Standards</u> and New Zealand <del>Equivalents International Financial Reporting Standards</del> <u>equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards</u> (NZ IFRS)...</p>
<p>SAE 3450</p>	<p>Appendix 3 Illustration 2</p>	<p>Pro Forma historical financial information ...being the recognition and measurement principles of IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p> <p>Prospective financial Information (PFI) ...being the recognition and measurement principles contained in IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p> <p>Pro Forma Prospective financial information ...being the recognition and measurement principles contained in IFRS <u>Accounting Standards</u> and NZ IFRS...</p>

---

**Date:** TBC

**To:** Michele Embling, Chair External Reporting Board

**From:** Marje Russ, Chair NZAuASB

**Subject: Certificate Signing Memorandum:**  
*Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as a Result of Adoption of NZ IFRS 18*

---

## Introduction

1. In accordance with the protocols established by the XRB Board, the NZAuASB seeks approval to issue *Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as a Result of Adoption of NZ IFRS 18*. This standard was approved by the NZAuASB on 12 June 2024.

## Background

1. The IFRS Foundation issued guidelines that the accounting standards issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) should be referred to as IFRS<sup>®</sup> Accounting Standards.
2. The IASB operationalised the guidelines in a new accounting standard IFRS 18 *Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements* and refers to “IFRS Accounting Standards” as opposed to “IFRS” or “International Financial Reporting Standards”.
3. In May 2024, the NZASB approved the New Zealand equivalent to International Financial Reporting Standard 18 *Presentation and Disclosure in Financial Statements*.
4. NZ IFRS 18 refers to IFRS Accounting Standards in a similar manner as IFRS 18. Additionally, references to the full name of “New Zealand equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards” are changed to “New Zealand equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”. The acronym “NZ IFRS” remains unchanged.
5. NZ IFRS 18 also introduces the following changes:
  - Withdrawal of NZ IAS 1 Presentation of Financial Statements. Requirements from NZ IAS 1 have been moved either to NZ IFRS 18, NZ IAS 8 or NZ IFRS 7.
  - Change of the name of NZ IAS 8 to “Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements”.
  - Change of the name of NZ IFRS 1 to “NZ IFRS 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand Equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”.
6. NZ IFRS 18 is applicable to for-profit entities for annual reporting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2027 – with earlier application permitted for accounting periods that begin before this date, but which do not end before it takes effect.



*Domestic process*

2. The audit and assurance standards are framework neutral, however examples that refer to accounting standards issued by International Accounting Standards Board and accounting standards issued by New Zealand Accounting Standards Board are found throughout the auditing and assurance standards.
3. The NZAuASB agreed that the following updates are required to the audit and assurance standards to refer to:
  - “IFRS Accounting Standards” instead of “IFRS” or “International Financial Reporting Standards”,
  - “New Zealand equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards” instead of “New Zealand equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards”.
  - NZ IFRS 18 or NZ IAS 8 instead of NZ IAS 1
  - NZ IAS 8 changed name “Basis of Preparation of Financial Statements”
  - NZ IFRS 1 changed name “NZ IFRS 1 First-time Adoption of New Zealand Equivalents to IFRS Accounting Standards”.
4. The above changes impact paragraphs referring to basis of preparation of financial statements in illustrative engagement letters, audit reports and representation letters.
5. We consider that [section 22\(1\)](#) of the Financial Reporting Act 2013 does not apply and that a formal public consultation/engagement is not necessary because:
  - The amendments are consequential in nature and result from adoption of NZ IFRS 18.
  - The changes are minor and relate only to change of the names, they do not change any intention of the current requirements or application material in any of the standards.

*International process*

6. The International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) intends to:
  - update the illustrative reports and the glossary in the 2024 edition of the IAASB Handbook to include references to IFRS Accounting Standards.
  - include a paragraph in the IAASB Handbook that notes that references to IFRS and IAS mean references to IFRS Accounting standards.
  - follow IFRS foundation guidelines with references to IFRS Accounting Standards in any new or revised standards.

*Australian process and harmonisation with Australia*

7. Auditing and Assurance Standards Board in Australia (AUASB) still need to consider the impact on Australian auditing and assurance standards. We do not anticipate that there are any harmonisation issues resulting from the different timing. We note that Australian Accounting Standards do not have “IFRS” in their name, therefore the

impact of the naming changes in Australian auditing and assurance standards might be much smaller.

*Timing matters*

8. The commencement and application date of the Amending Standard aligns with the commencement and application date of NZ IFRS 18. This means that the changes to the New Zealand auditing and assurance standards will be made ahead of changes to the IAASB standards and the AUASB standards. However, aligning the commencement date with accounting standard will allow reporting and auditing standards to work together, for example if an entity early adopts NZ IFRS 18.

**Privacy**

9. The Financial Reporting Act 2013, section 22(2) requires that the External Reporting Board consult with the Privacy Commissioner where an accounting or assurance standard is likely to require the disclosure of personal information. No such consultation is required in relation to this standard.

**Due process**

10. The due process followed by the NZAuASB complied with the due process requirements established by the XRB Board and in the NZAuASB's view meets the requirements of section 12(b) of the Financial Reporting Act 2013.

**Consistency with XRB Financial Reporting Strategy**

11. The adoption of this standard is consistent with one of the key strategic objectives set by the XRB Board for the NZAuASB to adopt international auditing and assurance standards, as applying in New Zealand unless there are compelling reasons not to.

**Other matters**

12. There are no other matters relating to the issue of this standard that the NZAuASB considers to be pertinent or that should be drawn to your attention.

**Recommendation**

13. The NZAuASB recommends that you sign the attached certificate of determination on behalf of the XRB Board.

**Attachments**

- *Amendments to Auditing and Assurance Standards as a Result of Adoption of NZ IFRS 18*
- Certificate of determination
- Approval certificate

**Marje Russ**

Chair NZAuASB